VALENTINE AND ORSON.

The Two Sonnes of the Emperour of *Greece*.

Newly Corrected and amended, with new *Pictures lively expreſſing the Hiſtorie.*

Printed at *London*, by *Thomas Purfoot*.
An. Dom. 1637.

VALENTINE
AND
ORSON.

The PRINTER, To the READER.

AMongſt many Hiſtories, as well Ancient as Moderne, which have in former times borowed our Engliſh phraſe to ſpeake withall: This (gentle Reader) heere of *Valentine* and *Orſon*, Sonnes to the Emperor of *Greece*, now once againe newly imprinted, craves a free paſſage of thy acceptance, and puts it ſelfe to the cenſure of thoſe Hyſtoriographers which make *Inuention* the eldeſt Daughter of the *Seven Sciences*.

Therefore conſidering with my ſelfe, the worthines of the ſtory, with the variety thereof, being many yeares agoe, firſt written in *French*, and ſince tranſlated into Engliſh, where it hath found a favorable welcome, as well of ſuperiors, as of inferiors: I have now againe to my coſt and charge publiſhed it to the eye and eare of ſuch to be ſeene or heard, as take pleaſure in theſe kind of writings. It is furniſhed with much ſtate of matter, Elegancy & Inuention, and decked forth with many faire

models & lively Pictures, all pertinent and agreeable to the ſubject of the Hiſtory, which I have cauſed to be newly cut, not onely to make it carry the more grace in reading, but a more luſtre to heroycke atchievements of knightly aduentures: For heere may the Princely mind ſee his own model, the Knightly Tilter his martial atchievements, and the amorous Lady her dulcet paſſages of love, here are Countries with the Courts of Kings deciphered, the magnitude of Honors laid open, the true forme of Tournaments deſcribed, and combats betweene knight & knight are here moſt lively portrayed, to the great content of the Reader. Let no man (therefore) thinke his time ill ſpent, or his labour loſt where the matter affordeth ſuch copiouſnes of pleaſure: The Hiſtory for the ſtrangenes, may well beare the title of *Courtly contents*, for indeed it is a garden of courtly delights, wherein growes flowers of an extraordinary ſavor, that gives a ſcent even into the boſoms of Nobility, Ladies, Knights, and Gentlemen. It gives alſo a working to the minds of the dull country ſwaynes, and as it were leads them to ſearch out for Martiall atchievements, befitting many paſtimes, & active pleaſures: Herein alſo is contained

the

the true differene betwixt art and nature, for in *Valentine* is comprehended the education of art: and in *Orſon* the true working of Nature, for being both one Emperors Sons, the one of them brought up in a Princes Pallace, the other amongſt ſavage beaſts, now makes the currant paſſe with the more admiration to the Reader, mark but the carriage of wild *Orſon*, & you ſhall find that Natu e hath a being above art, but yet Nature bettered by Art, hath a more noble Working.

This Hiſtory here written, was tranſlated out of *French* into *E gliſh* about 100. yeares agoe, by one *Henry Watſon*, and ſince that time it hath by him bin corrected, and put into a more plyant ſtile, & ſo followed on to the preſſe till this preſent Edition, which I have (as you ſee) heere publiſhed for thy benefit; Therefore gentle Reader, accept of this my coſt and paine, who had rather prove looſer, then ſo worthy a ſtory as this is, ſhould lye in obſcurity, for there are few Subjects of humane carriage, but are heerein handled, therefore the more fitting to be ſeen into; If you deſire to ſee the cares and troubles of kings, here they are: If you deſire to know the battels of Martiall Champions here they are: If of Courtly Tournaments and

Combats of Princes heere thy are : If of the travailes of knightly aduentures, heere they are: If of the ſorrows of diſtreſſed Ladyes, here they are : If of ſtrange births & ſavage educations, heere they are : If of friends long loſt, & of their joyfull meetings againe, here they are: If of charmes and inchantments, here they are : If the reward of Traitors & treaſons, here they are: If of long captivities and impriſonments, here they are; yea here are all the varieties, & paſſages that may furniſh forth a Hiſtory fit for a Readers pleaſure, for no unſeemly words or ſpeeches are herein contained, but ſuch as are modeſtly carried. Conſidering all which, I am now incouraged to put this old ſtory into a new livery, & not to ſuffer that to lie buried, that a little coſt may keepe alive; And ſo (gentle Reader) craving thy kind acceptance, I wiſh thee as much willingneſſe to the reading, as I have beene forward in the Printing, and ſo I end,

Farewell.

***

VALENTYNE.
PEPYN.
ORSON

The Hiſtory of *Valentine* and *Orſon.*

Chap. I.

How King *Pepin* baniſhed his Queene *Bertha*; And how he gave his Siſter *Bellyſant* in Marriage to *Alexander* Emperor of *Conſtantinople.*

WE find it credibly ſet downe in ancient Chronicles, that the thrice-Noble and valiant Pepin ſometimes a King of France, tooke to Wife, one Bertha, who was diſcended of no leſſe then Ropall race. This Lady was exceeding fayre and wiſe, but wonderfully combred with many aduerſities and troubles, enuiouſly beſet on euery ſide: which, with great patience ſhe alwayes ſuffered.

The chiefe Inſtrument of all this treacherous miſchiefe toward this good Queene, was plotted and effected by a falſe and curſed Old-woman, who firſt of all brought her in diſgrace with the king her husband, and after to be quite baniſhed his bed, whilſt ſhee in cunning manner, brought in a daughter of her owne vnto the Kings bed, in ſtead of his good Queene Bertha. This Old-woman, having thus brought her Treacherie to effect (for her Daughter ſome-what reſembled Bertha) It ſo came to paſſe, that King Pepin had two ſonnes by this Maiden: to wit Hauffey and Henry, both which Sonnes ſo grieued the King, and ſo waſted the Countrey of France by their out-rages and fury, that in the end they cauſed the Queene Bertha to be vtterly baniſhed, where ſhee

paſſed a great part of her dayes in doleſull lamentations, and abundance of ſorrow. Shee long enduring theſe miſerable daies of ſorrow, at the laſt, began to receive comfort againe. For it ſo chanced after, at the earneſt ſuit and requeſt of divers great Peeres and Lords of France, that this good Queene beganne to finde favour againe with King Pepin her husband, who, (when he knew the treacherie that the wicked Old Woman had plotted againſt her) much bewailed the miſeries ſhee had endured, and with great honour and Tryumph received her againe moſt kindely. The Queene beeing thus againe reſtored to her former bed, in ſhort time conceived and bare unto the King a goodly ſonne, called Charlemaine the puiſſant: but the King himſelfe was continually hunted from place to place, by the aforeſaid Haufrey and Henry, and at the laſt by them compelled to forſake his Realme, as heereafter followeth more at large in the enſuing Hiſtory. My purpoſe now at this preſent is, to ſet downe unto the Reader, the whole matter contained in this Booke; and eſpecially, the valiant acts and deeds of Valentine and his Brother Orſon.

This king Pepin, had a Siſter called Bellyſant a woman of great wit, beauty and all the endowments that Nature might affoord, which cauſed her Brother Pepins love mightily to appeare to all the world, in the ardent love and affection that he bare towards her. It chanced ſo that the fame of this lovely perſonage, ſpred it ſelfe ſo abroad in other Regions, that at laſt, King Alexander, Emperour of Conſtantinople, who was much enflamed with her beauty, came into France accompanied with a gallant Troope of his Nobilitie, all richly ſet out with all manner of pompe belonging to ſo great a perſonage.

This Emperour, ſhortly after his arrivall, ſuddenly aſſembled all his Lordes, in their rich habiliments, appointing them to take their way towardes King Pepins Court, to declare unto him the cauſe of his comming which was to enjoy his faire Siſter Bellyſant in marriage. The Nobles, according to his Commaund, came unto King Pepin, declaring unto him the cauſe of their Emperours comming into his Countrey: which when King Pepin underſtood, hee joyfully entertayned them, and granted quickly the Emperours requeſt.

King

King Pepin underſtanding this ſuddaine (but ioyfull) newes, made great preparation in his Court, for the entertayning of this Noble Emperour: and cauſed all his Nobles and Attendants to goe with him in great pompe and Tryumph, to meet this Noble Emperour. All things being in a readineſſe, King *Pepin* with all his Noble Traine, went to meet Alexander Emperour of Conſtantinople: whom when they met, they entertained with great ioy, and conducted him to the Court of Fraunce where faire Bellyſant was, and ſhe entertained him with no leſſe ioy, then her Brother King *Pepin* had done before: and there they ſpent the time in great ioy and tryumphing.

This Marriage being once publikely knowne among all the Inhabitants, ioy began to ſhew forth it ſelfe on every ſide, for ſuch a happy day, wherein ſuch good alliance was knit betweene the Emperour Alexander and *Pepin* King of Fraunce, that Try

umphs began in every place againſt the Nuptiall dayes appearance. When the time appointed came, theſe two were eſpouſed in all the Honour fitting their Eſtates, and Largeſſe ſhewed it ſelfe on every ſide. This Partage Feaſt endured long, but at laſt being ended, the Emperour (aſſiſted with all his worthy Traine) made preparation to take their leave of King Pepin his Brother in law, and take their way towards Conſtantinople, with his faire Empreſſe Bellyſant. Being thus al mounted on Horſebacke, King Pepin alſo ſet forward with his Brother Emperor, to bring him on his way, Royally attended on every ſide, with Lords, Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court: And they that could not find legs to goe, found eyes to weepe at the departure of their faire Lady and Miſtreſſe the new Empreſſe of Conſtantinople.

At laſt, both theſe mighty Princes came neere unto a Port of the Sea, whereat they muſt needs part: there taking leave of each other, they were forced to render more thankes in teares than wordes, the which I am not able to expreſſe. But above all, the Emperour yeelded King Pepin worthy thankes, for his quicke, ſuddaine, and grievous conſent in giving to him his fayre Siſter Bellyſant, and with ſo francke and free a heart to yeeld him his good will. At which wordes of the Emperour unto King Pepin, the King preſently embraced him in his armes, ſaying, Faire Sir, and my Right loving Lord and Brother, I have not received you according as your eſtate required, nor with ſuch Triumphes and magnificence as became me, but in that you have ſo graciouſly accepted my ſmall power, I hold my ſelfe content in that I have done, but not what I ſhould have done: and therefore, there belongeth ſmall thankes unto me, but from me, innumerable: in that you have beene pleaſed to accept of my Siſter for your Wife: whereby (I truſt) long friend-ſhip ſhall bee continued betwixt us: In token whereof, I take witneſſe of all that are here preſent, that my body, my Realme, my Goods, and all the powers that I can raiſe in Fraunce, to adventure for your ſafety and ſuccour all the daies of my life.

King Pepin being thus departed from the Emperour, turned himſelfe

himſelfe vnto his Siſter Bellyſant, and in this manner takes his leave: Faire Siſter (quoth he) thinke no longer of this Country of France, wherein you haue ſpent your infant daies, but remember that you are remooued to a Country of other conditions. Alſo, let your behauiour be ſuch, that I, the reſt of our Friends, and the whole company of all the Peeres, may haue honour and joy in you.

Againe, as the Countrey whither you now doe goe is ſtrange vnto you, ſo bee you gouerned by the modeſt Ladies of the Land, and giue no eare to wicked Counſell, or to ſuch as would moouе you to diſloyaltie. For you are the Creature that I haue alwaies deareſt loued in all the world. wherefore, If I ſhould heare tydings other then good from you, or of you it would be the onely cauſe to take away my life. After this he gaue vnto his Siſter many worthy gifts, and ſo embracing and kiſſing her, with weeping eyes, he left her to the mercy of the Waues. The young Lady, whoſe heart being ouercharged betwirt Joy and Feare, was not able to anſwer a word, onely what with teares and ſighes, the paſſage of her tongue was vtterly ſtopt. Then all the Lords & Ladies tooke their leaues each of other, at which was let fall many brinish teare as well on their parts of France, as they alſo that were to goe for Conſtantinople, but eſpecially, for the departure of the Faire Lady Bellyſant.

All duties of loue being ended, King Pepin returned into France, and the Emperour by this time mounted on the Seas, had wind and water at ſuch will and pleaſure, that within ſhort ſpace hee with all his Traine arriued in ſafety in Conſtantinople: where at their landing they were all receiued with great Joy, Honour, and Triumph: All which, here were needleſſe to recount. But marke what happened: not long after theſe Joyes and Triumphs were cleane extinguiſhed that was made for the Ladie Bellyſant, in place thereof, nothing but mournings, lamentations, and teares were placed, and all for the ſaid poore Ladie, which by treaſon and falſe accuſations, was caſt out and baniſhed, as hereafter more at large you ſhall perceiue.

CHAP II.

How the Arch-Prieſt of Conſtantinople betrayed the Emperour his Lord and Maiſter in making love to faire *Bellyſant* the Empreſſe, and what evill followed thereupon.

IN Conſtantinople lived an Arch-Prieſt, in whome the Emperour put ſuch truſt and loved ſo feruently, that hee beſtowed vppon him great Riches and Poſſeſſions, and committed all his Boſome-thoughts vnto his ſecrecy: And in the end made him ſole-Gouernour and Commander ouer his houſe, as alſo, hee was the Emperors principall Confeſſor, and one of his greateſt Counſellors, for the which, hee afterward had many a ſorrowfull heart.

This Biſhop, forgetting all the Emperors fabours and great honours done vnto him, being entangled and ouercome with the beauty of the new Empreſſe, which excelled all mortall creatures: Inordinate luſt prevailed with him ſo farre, that there was nothing ſtood in his way, ſave onely fit time and opportunitie to fettle this his determination. At laſt, it ſo chanced on a day, that he eſpied her all alone ſitting ſolitarilie in her Chamber, which this Arch-Prieſt well obſerving, hee came into the Chamber likewiſe, and ſate downe by her, At laſt, hee began to behold her with a ſmiling and feſting countenance, of al which, the Lady miſtruſted nothing, for that ſhee very well remembred his greatneſſe with the Emperour, and his familiarity in the houſe, and ſhee never ſo much as once Dreaming or thinking of ſuch an evill thought, as that, hee thereby would colour ſo foule and filthy an Act, as to motion her to diſhonour, eſpecially, towards the Emperour his worthy Lord and Maiſter, who ſo dearely eſteemed of him, and ſo much affected him: But there is never more danger like to enſue, then when one

af-

of the ſame houſe intendeth Treaſon. But at the laſt, after many geaſtures of impuritie, and ſitting ſtill by this worthie and vertuous lady, he began to utter his laſcivious thoughts on this manner.

Right Deare and Soveraigne Lady (quoth he) I am your Seruant & Chaplen, therfore I beſeech you not to ſtop your eares, but rather ſet them wide open to heare my rude words, eſpecially for that I am burnt up in affection towards your faire perſon, and for whoſe love, I have ſuffered intollerable torments in my fiery boſome. Know therefore, (my redoubted Ladie) that the beauty of your admirall perſon, and the ſupernaturall forme wherein you are framed and compoſed, hath even raviſhed my Spirits, broken my heart, ſplit my whole ſences in ſunder, and quite bereft mee of all reſt both by night and day, and onely with doting upon your peereleſſe Beautie. Againe, (faire Lady) my meate, drinke, manners, yea, and my very countenance, they all plead at the Barre of your faire face and reſplendant Countenance, Inſomuch, that onely my requeſt and Prayers unto the Gods, is even this, that they would ſo inchant that heart of yours, that you would at length give conſent unto me your vaſſall, that I might not onely ſerue you, but alſo delight you in all thoſe pleaſures you are ordained unto. If Lady you refuſe me, and caſt mee off, denying theſe my vnreſtfull thoughts (then which nothing will ſooner cut my heart in ſunder) I can looke for nothing but preſent Death, and rather covet therein to be locked faſt, as in a priſon, then receive deniall from thoſe your faire lips. Alas (faire Ladie) you are renowned in all the gifts of nature: Faire, Amiable, Courteous, Gentle, and alſo Youthfull, bee not then the cauſe that I ſhould determine my life by looſing your love, but rather grant what I deſire, and therby make mee for ever yours in hearty affection. But Ladie, happily you will vrge how you dare to offend the Gods in this vnlawfull Act? To this faire Ladie, I anſwer, I am one of the Vicars of the Gods upon earth, and therefore it wholy reſts in my power, to abſolue you from your ſinnes, and enjoyne you pennance, which truſt mee Lady, ſhall fall out to be but very eaſie, ſo you graunt mee love.

Theſe ſpeeches of his being ended, the Ladie thereunto out of a

grabe and prudent cariage, made unto this perjur'd Prieſt this excelent reprehenſion and anſwere. Ah, thou falſe, unjuſt diſloyall, and Diveliſh Prieſt, ſtaine to all thy Profeſſion: how dareſt thou once open thy perjured mouth to ſuch a maſſe of Villanies as thereout may enſue? Firſt, as I ſayd againſt thy ſacred order: ſecondly but moſt principally againſt the Majeſty of that Emperor, that hath ever nouriſhed thee in the bond of tender compaſſion and love, and hath raiſed thee to great dignities farre unfit for ſuch a Devill incarnate: And from whom may juſtly proceed the ſentence of Condemnation, both on thee and mee, if he ſhould but underſtand thy laſcivious and wicked practiſes. Thou (I ſay Devill and worſe then Devill) thou, that ſhouldeſt be unto me inſtruction, and alſo a guide to my life and converſation, in this thou goeſt about my utter ruine and deſtruction, by thy evill conditions, even beyond that good expectation which the Emperor truſteth to bee in thee. O never grant (O ye Gods) that the bloud of France, from whence I am deſcended, nor the Emperour my loving Lord, ſhould be ſo diſhonoured, either by me in my bodie, or through my pitie in any other manner. O falſe accurſed man, behold whereunto thou wouldſt deliver me: firſt unto the utter ruine and ſpoyle of mine honour: next, ſhut up my bodie in unremoveable ſhame for ever, amongſt men: And laſtly, tying my ſoule into the Jawes of death, and the Devill. Let fall I ſay, all theſe thy vile and Diveliſh provocations to luſt, and leave for ever hereafter to ſolicite me or any other vertuous creature on this manner, which if thou further proſecute unto me, then canſt thou looke for nothing but a ſhameſull downe fall, and a moſt damnable death. Therefore with this anſwer depart and ſee that you attempt me no more.

This angry farewell of the worthy Empreſſe ſtung the Prieſt at the very heart, but at that time hee durſt make no further reply unto the faire Ladie concerning love, but as a man all compoſed of rage and great fury, he then departed, diſcontent at this his moſt unfortunate and unhappy chance. At the laſt, when he could no longer holde, hee excuſed himſelfe unto the Ladie, craving pardon for theſe his bold, ſawcy, and raſh follies committed, but yet could find

no

no remedy to reſtore his honour. Thus being ſore troubled in mind diuers and ſundry waies, he reſolued what to doe vpon reuenge againſt this Innocent, which he accordingly effected by Treaſon againſt the Ladie. And ſeeing the Emperour knew nothing in this matter from the Empreſſe Bellyſant how the Arch-Prieſt would haue inticed her to diſhonour, and would haue drawn her to diſloyalty to the Emperour, but he could not, therefore he began to accuſe her vnto the Emperour for diuers crimes, as heereafter more at large followeth to be ſpoken of in this next enſuing Chapter.

CHAP. III.

How the Arch-Prieſt having receiued this repulſe at the hands of *Bellyſant*, to ſaue his owne honor, practiſed Treaſon againſt the Innocent Lady.

THe Arch-Prieſt, hauing now begun to ſet abroach his Diuelliſh practiſes, beganne to bethinke him how he might effect what hee had determined, and alſo preſerue the reputation of his former Honours, which the Emperour had beſtowed vpon him: whereupon at laſt he reſolued, that he would cunningly vnder the cloake of diſſimulation beare faire weather toward the Emperour, as alſo ſeemed to ſhew how great care hee had of his preſeruation, and to make knowne his loyalty and watchfull care that he euer had towards the welfare of his eſtate and perſon. So it befell that on a day whenas he eſpied a fit opportunity, and taking the Emperor all alone, he began to breake with him on this manner as followeth.

Right High and mighty Emperour, and my very good Lord and

and Maister, I cannot choose but recount and highlie esteeme of the many and innumerable labours and great kindnes which I have alwaies receiued from your mighty Highnesse: wherefore as duty doth alwaies bind me, I am euer most watchfull ouer the passage of your Estate, in which I now stand by you appointed: But especially in that you haue made me sole Commander in your house, and therein trusted me aboue all other: therefore it is my duty, to bewray unto you all those carriages that any way concerne your High and Mighty person, wherefore I beseech your Highnesse to giue eare to that which I shall now disclose unto you, for I had rather suffer all the torments of Death, then for to hide any thing from you: and the rather, for that it nearely toucheth your person, profit, and honour. O Emperor thus it is, Bellysant your Wife and Sister to the King of France, she, whom you haue aduanced to this state and dignity, faileth in the duty and loyaltie which she oweth unto her dread Lord: for shee wandreth in her love giving it unto another, which is proper onely to your selfe: To name the person unto your Majesty I will not, for you know I am a Sacred Priest, and may not seeke the bloud of any man, but yet know for certaine that by way of Confession I came vnto the light hereof, wherefore I neither ought nor will bewray the Name of him that thus vsurpes your bed: but let it suffice, there is not a more vncleane and lascibious Woman liueth in your Court or Kingdome, whereby your life is in danger, your honour defamed, and my duty towards you approved by what I haue told you. My aduise therefore is to be warie of your Person, and correct this her folly, but yet mildly and wisely, alwayes with the preseruation of your honour. For will it not be a great shame among the Princes of the earth, that you having taken a Wife, Sister to a great King, one who for her beauty is incomparable, her nobleneſſe & wisedome not to be out-shined of any earthly Ladie, and shee to prove a Whore: and what worse is, one who daily desireth your death, which griedes my very heart to think vpon.

The Emperour having heard this long accusation, little mistrusted the Treachery of this Arch-Priest, but gaue credit unto all his faire, but false words: and withall, became extreame pen-

siue

ſiue and ſad, that his truſt in her beauteous Lode, had been thus deceiued. At laſt, hauing many dayes in many places vttered forth many diſcontented geſtures, words, and ſighes: and many grieuous acclamations, euen in his Imperiall Pallace, he gaue reſt a while vnto his diſcontented Paſſions, but wakened reuenge to waite vpon fitter opportunity. And vpon a day, entring into the Chamber of his faire Lady Bellyſant, and without ſpeaking any word to her at all, in moſt fierce, rude, and vnmanly order, tooke his Ladie by the head, and pulling her by the hayre, he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the ground in ſuch horrid manner, that the bloud beſmeared all her face in moſt inhumane ſort. The Lady receiuing from her Lord ſuch vnlookt-for welcome, cryed out in lamentable manner, and as well as ſhee was able, began to ſay. Alas (my deare Lord) what moodeth you to this vnwelcome out-rage? I call all the Gods to witneſſe, I neuer did any thing in my life, either againſt your honour or life, or euer proſtituted my Body to any Strangers loue. The Emperor not being thus ſatisfied, replyed, ſaying: Thou Whore, I am too well informed of thy proceedings, and curſed be the day and houre that euer I ſaw thy deceiueable face, and therewithall, without all pittie dalhed her head againſt the ground, leaving her ſpeechleſſe: inſomuch, that all the Damoſels her attendants, thought ſhee had beene quite bereaued of life. Vppon this, there aroſe vp in the Court a moſt pittifull out-cry, which the Counſellours and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran ſpeedily to the Chamber, whereas they found this Lady in a Trance: at which diſaſter, all amazed, ſome ran to take vp the dead body of the Empreſſe: Others tooke vpon them to ſpeake vnto the Emperour, thinking thereby to ſtay the fury of this vndeſerued out-rage, whoſe words vnto him were as followeth.

Alas (dread Soueraigne) what may be the cauſe of this your ſuddayne paſſion in deliuering vnto danger of death, this ſo modeſt, chaſt, and noble a Lady: a Lady ſo beloued of all degrees, and in whom was neuer ſeene the leaſt ſparke of diſhonour, neither towardes you nor any within your Empire: wherefore our requeſt vnto you is, that you would moderate your wrong conceiued anger

againſt

againſt this harmeleſſe Ladie. The Emperour nothing for all this relenting, anſwered: Speake no more for I know, I ſee, I heare, how cunningly thee hath deluded me: Therefore move me no further, for I am fully purpoſed to deliver her over to Death, and he, or they ſhall hereunto gaine-ſay, I ſhall make him partaker (in Death) with this wicked and diſloyall Strumpet.

Theſe words were no ſooner uttered, but up aroſe a worthy, wiſe, and couragious bold Baron, and ſpake unto the Emperour, after this manner: Right worthy Sir, I could wiſh you be well adviſed, before you further proceed againſt this Lady, who is your eſpouſed wife, ſiſter to a great King, namely Pepin King of France, who when he ſhall heare of this wrong done to her, will out of a couragious heart, and a brotherly affection, muſter up all his men of war, and ſuddenly ſurpriſe our Townes, Houſes, Wives, and Children, forgetting mercy, and onely purſuing revenge upon us, for theſe mercileſſe and cruell deeds unto his Siſter, Againe, conſider on the other ſide that the Ladie is great with Child, therfore it is dangerous ſo rudely to ſmite and wound her on this manner wherein you have proceeded againſt her. The worthy Barron having thus ended his advice, the Lady ſuddenly fell upon her knees before the Emperor, and in teares very ſubmiſſively and lamentably, thus ſhe ſpake.

Alas (my Lord) take pitty on an Innocent Lady, for I am ſo free from any evill Act, as I never ſo much as thought any evill againſt your perſon or dignity: at leaſt my Lord, if your compaſſion be quite extinct from pittying mee yet pittie, the fruit of my body, for I am great with childe by you, of which, the Gods grant me a joyfull delibery. If nothing can appeaſe your anger towards me, then let my body be impriſoned in ſome ſtrong Tower, till the time of my delibery, and then doe with my bodie what pleaſeth you ſo the fruit of my body may be kept ſafe. In this dolorous paſſion ſhee proceeded ſo farre, that what with her ſighes and teares following one of the other, it would have grieved the ſtonieſt heart, that ever reſted in the boſome of the vileſt Tyrant that ever raigned.

All this nothing mooved the hard-hearted Emperour, who was

ſo

ſo wholy bewitched with the falſe and traiterous accuſation of the Arch-Prieſt, that all lenity ſet apart, he burſt out in this manner: Thou falſe Strumpet, the Child thou goeſt withall is to me no ioy, but rather great diſhonour, for thy behaviour and thy diſloyalty hath made ſuch a ſeparation betweene vs that noting thy diſſolute life, thou haſt made another partner in my labe. The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mittigate the rage of the Emperour, by a common conſent remooved her out of his preſence into another Chamber, ſhewing vnto her all the fauour they could, both in action and geſture, although her fayre face was ſore deformed and beſmeared with blood. Having thus conueyed her away, the Ladies that were attendant, fetched water to waſh her face, and all they could, revived her euer-dying Spirits. Being thus in another Chamber, in comes Blandiman her Squire, who beholding her in this diſfigured manner, for very pitty the Water trickled downe his Cheekes, and at the laſt he began his ſpeech in this manner.

Ah padam, I plainely ſee that you are traiterouſly handled, and with ỹ Gods would throw down their malignant curſes vpon that perſon that hath thus purchaſed your extreame miſeries: but gentle Lady take comfort vnto you, and truſt mee, if you will be ruled by me, I will conduct you backe againe into France toward your Brother King Pepin, who gaue me and my Seruice vnto you, to attend you in all theſe miſfortunes, all which I will to the vttermoſt of my power vndertake. Sweet Lady follow my Counſell, and free your ſelfe out of danger: for bee you aſſured, that if heere you ſtay, the Emperor will proſecute reuenge vpon you, and in the end bring you vnto a ſhameful death.

Vnto this the ſorrowfull Lady made this reply: Ha Blandiman I know thy faithfull ſeruice towards me, but yet, if I ſhould follow thy aduiſe, and ſteale out of this Countrey ſecretly it would argue mee guilty of all that infamy the Emperor throweth vpon mee, and thereby yeelds me guilty of the deed: Beleeue me Seruant, I had rather dye all the deaths the world can lay vpon me, rather then to beare the blame of that wherein I am an innocent.

By this time the Emperours choller was ſomewhat paſſed, by,

by meanes of his Lords and Barons that attended, inſomuch that he cauſed Bellyſant to be quickly brought before him. When ſhee was come, his heart trembled and fretted for very anger, that hee durſt not put her to death, fearing the puiſſance and might of her Brother King Pepin, and therefore braſt out into theſe ſpeeches: Thou falſe and accurſed woman, by whome mine honour is brought in queſtion, I take the Gods to witnes, were it not for thy Brothers ſake, the valiant Pepin King of France, I would make thee Fry in Fire, as an example to all falſe Ladies: but for his ſake I ſpare thy life, ſtand forth and heare thy judgement. I banish thee out of my Country and Empire, expreſſly commanding, that without any delay, to morrow thou depart out of this Citty, and if thou ſhalt ever be ſeene heere any more, I aſſure thee thou ſhalt ſuffer Death in all extreamity. Alſo, I ſtraightly command, that none of my Countrey dare be once ſo hardy, as to give aid or accompany you, ſave onely your ſeruant Blandimain, whom you brought with you out of France. Goe get thee preſently out of my ſight, for thou ſhalt never more ſleepe in my boſome. The Emperour having pronounced ſentence againſt her: the Empreſſe Bellyſant, accompanied with her ſeruant Blandiman, ſpeedily haſted to horſe. Being thus mounted, and then paſſing through this fayre City towardes one of the gates thereof, there met her people in great multitudes, of all degrees much lamenting the loſſe of ſo faire a Lady, and ſo lovely an Empreſſe. When ſhee came to the vtmoſt part, even ready to goe out of the Gates of the City, there was heard ſuch a lamentable howling of mourning voyces, that the like was never heard in the City of Conſtantinople.

When ſhee was out of the Walles of the City, and but newly entred into the Wilde Fields, ſhee began to fall into a womanly fit of bitter weeping, to ſee how ſhamefully and diſhonorably ſhee was handled, cauſeleſſe. Againe, to thinke vpon her Birth, and the Imperiall Dignitie from whence ſhee was fallen, as alſo, to recount the miſfortunes wherein ſhee was likely to finiſh the reſt of her dayes, it drave her at laſt from teares, to vtter her griefes in theſe words: Alas in what vnhappy houre was I borne, to fall full from ſo high Eſtate, to ſo low and abject poverty as I am

now

now in? Woe is mee, the vnhappieſt among Women? Now are all my ioyes turned topſie turuy, my laughter is turned into weeping, my Songs conuerted into ſighes. In ſtead of Cloath of gold wherewith I was wont to bee cloathed, now am I glad of all manner of meane attire: My precious ſtones of ineſtimable Valew are all taken from mee, and Pearles of teares ſtand ouer all my Garments. Oh you Fields and Woods, to you I make my moane, for other company I haue none, conſider my eriie, and helpe to bewaile my miſfortunes. Oh would the Gods had pitied my diſtreſſe, and made me the pooreſt amongſt Creatures, then had not fortune giuen me ſo foule a fall, at leaſt my poore Eſtate would neuer haue grieued mee? Wherefore doth the beauteous Sunne ſend forth his beames vpon a wretch ſo miſerable? Why doth the earth beare ſuch a Creature, that is all compoſed of calamities, It is not poſſible for my tongue to tell out my hearts ſorrow. O wretched man (whatſoeuer thou art) that by thy wicked Treaſon haſt brought me to this downefall, I may well curſe thee with bitternes of heart, for by thee onely am I made thus vnfortunate? Ah my Brother what ſhould thou do with ſuch a woefull wight to thy Siſter? It had beene better I had not beene borne then that I ſhould proode ſuch a ſtaine to thy Kingly houſe. As ſhe was thus complaining to her ſecret heart, the anguiſh therof ſtroke her into a ſwoond, as ſhee ſate on horſebacke, and was ready at the inſtant to haue fallen from off her Horſe, ere her ſeruant could alight, to recouer her, but hee vſed all the ſpeedieſt meanes for her recouery, at laſt ſhee comming to her ſelfe againe, he ſaid vnto her.

Alas Madam, bee not ſo diſcomforted, neither let deſpaire ſo far ſeize vpon you, but truſt yee that the Gods will keepe and defend you, for they are ready to aid and aſſiſt the Innocent. Hauing thus ſpoken, he ſuddenly eſpied a Fountaine, toward the which he and his Lady tooke their way, and being come neere thereunto, he ſet her downe thereby, to eaſe and refreſh her long ouer-tyred limbes. Here at this Spring leaue we the Lady and her Squire, and turne we now to the traiterous Arch-Prieſt, who was the cauſe of all theſe Treacherous and euill practiſes.

CHAP.

CHAP. IIII.

How the Arch-Priest put vpon him the habite of a knight at Armes, and being well mounted, followed the Empresse *Bellyfant* who was lately banished.

THe Arch-Priest having now wrought the banishment of faire Bellyfant, thought with himselfe now he should surely accomplish his desire: wherefore, in all hast he changed his white Rochet, into a cote of Steele, and begirt vnto his side a Sword, and being thus accoutred, he suddenly was mounted vpon a Milke-white Steede, the fairest that could be had in all Constantinople. Being thus mounted, hee made after with all expedition, inquiring of all he met, which way the Lady Bellyfant was taken, who gladly told him which way shee lately passed. After some few houres riding, at last he came to a great spacious Forrest, and very long, taking the direct way towards the Lady It chanced that as he was riding forward, casting his eye aside he presently espied the Lady, with her seruant Blandiman, sitting by a Fountaine but, suddenly withdrew himselfe, and comming neerer, found the Ladie sitting by the same full of heavinesse, lamenting her miserable misfortunes, and by her sate her trusty seruant comforting her.

This false Priest, from forth his Beaver, well perceived it to be the Lady, but by reason of his disguise, she could not imagine him to be the Arch Priest her enemy, but comming nearer vnto her, she soone deserted him, and being stricken with a sudden feare, spake thus to her seruant. Alas (quoth shee) I well perceive this to be the false Arch-Priest, that thus commeth towards vs, of whom

whom I am exceeding fearefull, leaſt he be come to do me further villanie. Ladie (quoth Blandimaine) baniſh feare, for if he come after vs to doe you further harme, I will encounter him bodie for bodie, even as long as life laſteth. By this time that they had ended their ſpeech each to other, the Arch-Priеſt was ready to alight from his Horſe, to ſalute the Lady in all courteous behaviour: and after he had made himſelfe knowne vnto her, he beganne to ſay vnto her after this manner.

Right deare Ladie, and our late honoured Empreſſe, ſith thy caſe is ſo pitifull, as to ſuffer baniſhment by ſentence giuen againſt thee by the Emperor, ſo it is, that if thou wilt giue me entertainement in thy loue, accept mee into thy fauour, and grant what I haue long ſought at thy hands, I will ſo bring it to paſſe, that the Emperor ſhall againe recall thy Baniſhment, and make thy greatneſſe of State, ſhine more bright then euer before. Therefore aduiſe you well, for I proteſt what I offer you, is onely tending to your good and aduancement. Ha (quoth the Ladie) thou diſloyall and traiterous aduerſary, I haue no great cauſe to beſtow loue, where my life hath been put in ieopardie. It is onely thou that haſt wrought my ouerthrow: and thou it is, that makeſt me to ſpend the remnant of my daies in more miſery then euer Lady is able to endure. Lady (quoth he) vtter not forth ſuch curſes againſt mee, for I come not to you, to vexe or trouble you, but to heape vpon you more ioyes then euer you as yet in al your life enioyed. And in ſpeaking theſe words, he bended his bodie to ꝑ Lady, thinking to haue killed her, but Blandiman perceiuing his intent ſuddenly ſtarted betweene them, & gaue the Arch-Priеſt ſo mighty a ſtrok ꝑ he felled him to the earth, & with the violence of the blow, brake out one of his teeth. The Arch-Priеſt had no ſooner recouered himſelfe from the ground, but ſuddenly betooke him to his ſword, which Blandimain perceiuing, betooke him to a Glaue which he had about him, whereupon grew a ſore & dangerous fight betweene them.

This encounter laſted ſo long, that they were both wounded, but ſtil they continued fighting, til at length it chanced a Merchant came that way, who perceiuing a far off their fierce encounter, cryed out with a loud voice, in this manner: Lords, Lords, quoth

hee, leave off: and ſhew the cauſe of this your variance, and I ſhall do my beſt to end this Controuerſie. Sir (quoth Blandiman) let vs firſt try our right by our weapons, and afterwards we will be ruled by words. But the poore Lady could no longer forbeare ſilence, but began to tell this Marchant as followeth. Alas (quoth ſhee) as you euer pittied woman, pitty my caſe: for this man whom heere you ſee armed, is the falſe and Traiterous Arch-Prieſt, that hath followed me to rob me of mine Honour, and force me to his wicked and inſatiate Luſt: Alſo, this is hee that hath made a ſeparation betweene mee and the Emperor my Lord and Husband. The Marchant hearing her lamentable tale, pittied her miſery, and began thus vnto the Arch-Prieſt: Sir Prieſt, leave off your enterprize, and dare not ſo much as to touch this innocent Lady, for if the Emperor did but vnderſtand this villany, hee would ſoon end thy life in infamie, as thou well deſerueſt. Aſſoone as the Arch-Prieſt had heard his ſpeech, he forſooke the Combat, & fled as faſt as he could through the wood, for feare of being further knowne, being prevented of his purpoſe toward the Lady: though he conueyed his body out of ſight, yet his villanies were afterward diſcloſed. After his departure, ỹ Lady was forced to ſtay ſtil in the wood all forrowfull, wᵭ her wounded ſeruant. The Marchant ſtayed with thē ſome little time, bewailing the hard hap of the Lady, yet comforted her, ſaying: Alas Lady I ſee that this Arch-Prieſt hath falſely betraped you, and brought you into hatred with the Emperour, but I will promiſe you, that if I liue I will bewray all theſe Treacheries to the Emperour, and bring the Traytor to a ſhamefull death. And ſo taking leave, I commend you to the Gods, wiſhing that in theſe extreamities you would be patient, and comfort your ſelfe in theſe your ſorrowes: ſo with many thankes for his aid from Blandiman, the Marchant departed.

The Marchant having left thē, Blandimain ſet ỹ Lady vpon her horſe, & himſelfe on his, ſo riding on together, they came vnto a lodging lying in their way, where they remained eight daies. During which time, her ſeruant was recouered of his wounds, & then ſet forward toward France, the Lady ſtil ſorrowful & complaining in this manner. Alas Blandiman what may my Brother and the

Peeres

Peeres of France thinke of this when they ſhall underſtand that I am expelled Greece for ſuch a diſhonorable deed, and as a common Harlot banished from the Emperour of Conſtantinople. Alas I am perſwaded, that the King my brother will eaſily entertaine it, that I am guilty of the deed, and in his anger, care not to deliver me over to death. Lady (quoth he) be not thus diſcouraged, but truſt in the Gods, who will revenge your injuries, and pay it home upon the offenders head. During the time of theſe diſcourſes, they had paſſed divers countries and Regions, till at laſt, they came into France, and paſſing by Orleance, they tooke their way towards Paris, where King Pepin was accuſtomed to ſojourne. So entring into a Foreſt neere vnto Orleance, there happened new miſeries vnto this Empreſſe, of which more hereafter enſueth.

CHAP. V.

How *Bellyſant* in her baniſhment, was delivered of Two fayre Sonnes in the Wood, whoſe Names were *Valentine* and *Orſon*, and how ſhe loſt them.

BEllyſant (as before you heard) being with Child, was ſuddenly overtaken in the Foreſt. The time of her delivery being come, cauſed her to forſake her Horſe, and began to complaine her to her ſeruant, on this manner. Alas, (quoth ſhe) helpe, helpe, I ſay, to lay me downe ſoftly vnder ſome great tree and when I am laid make haſt to find me helpe of Women, whereſoever thou canſt get any, for I can goe no further, my paines ſo much encreaſe in multitudes, vpon me.

Blandiman her ſeruant did as thee commanded, and for that he knew not how to find the ſame place againe, he ſet a ſpecial marke, that he might the readier come thither againe: and ſo betaking him to Horſe, he rode forth ſwiftly to ſeeke ſome woman to helpe this diſtreſſed Lady.

He being gone, the Lady was left comfortleſſe all alone, without ſuccour of any Creature, ſo that at laſt ſhe was delivered of two faire Sonnes, in the deſolate Foreſt. Theſe Children were no ſoo-

ner come into ỳ World, but a freſh miſery woꝛſe then all the reſt that ſhe had endured happned vnto this Lady, foꝛ as ſhe lay vpon the earth vnder ỳ Tree, & her two Infants by her, ſuddenly came to her a huge beare, moſt hoꝛribly to behold, & tooke vp one of the Infants in her mouth, & with great pace hatted into ỳ thickeſt of ỳ Foꝛreſt.

This ſtrange & vnlookt foꝛ accident, frighted the diſtreſſed Lady to the ſoule, that ſhe cried out moſt lamentably, getting vp vpon her hands & feet, to hatten after the aforeſaid Beare, which was quickly got out of her ſight. But alas, it little avayled her to make any further purſute, foꝛ ſhee never came vnto the ſight of the Child, till by miracle it was at length diſcloſed. So long wandered this Lady vp and downe, and from place to place, weeping

weeping & crying out for her Child, that being overwearied with travell: ſhee fell into a great ſickeneſſe, inſomuch that ſhee was thereby neere depryved of her life: ſo that at the laſt ſhe fell into a ſwound upon the cold earth as if ſhee had yeelded up the Ghoſt. In this extaſſe, leave we her, and now proceed to the other Childe, which ſhe left under the Tree.

It happened the ſame day, that her Brother King Pepin had taken his iourney from Paris (accompanied with divers great Lords and Barons towards Conſtantinople, to viſit his Siſter Bellifant, and ſtriking through Orleance, he made ſuch haſte, that hee entred into the ſame Foreſt where as his banished Siſter was lately delivered of her Two Children, but knowing nothing what had happened. Now as the King paſſed through this Foreſt, he eſpied lying under a tree alone, the other ſon of Bellyſant, which when he ſaw, he ſayd unto his Attendants: By Lords by the appointment of the Gods, ſee I have heere found a faire encounter, even a Child. By the Gods (ſaid the Lords) you ſay truth. Why ſaid the King, take it up, and it ſhall be brought up at my charge, ſo long as it liveth, and it ſhall want no manner of Attendance, but be uſed as it were mine owne. For if it live untill it comes to mans eſtate, I will endow it with lands and poſſeſſions after the nobleſt manner: And therewithall, calling unto him one of his Squires, gave him the ſole charge thereof, ſaying to him on this manner: Hold thee, bare thou this infant to Orleance, ſee it baptized, provide a good Nurſe for it, and let it nothing appertaining thereunto: the King little ſuſpecting that this Child was his Nephew.

The Squire, did as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to Orleance, cauſed it to be baptized, and gave it his owne name called Valentine. After, he ſought out a Nurſe for the Child, & gave it great attendance according to the kings command.

This done, the King proceeded on his journey toward Conſtantinople, to ſee his lovely and beauteous Siſter Bellyſant, but ere he could paſſe through the Foreſt, he chanced to meete with Blandiman, accompanied with a Woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady in her greateſt extreamity of Child-birth.

Blandiman eſpying the King, knew him, and ſuddenly alighted from his horſe, doing his dutie vnto him. The King perceiving it to bee Blandiman, asked what good newes from Conſtantinople, and aboue the reſt, how doth our Siſter Bellyſant? Blandiman anſwered, moſt gracious Soueraigne, I bring you but little tydings, yet thoſe I bring, are bitter, and charpe: For (amongſt the reſt) I muſt tell you ſtrange newes of your louing Siſter and how ſhee fares. Wherefore ſo it is that by forged Treaſon and falſe ſuggeſtion of the curſed Arch-Prieſt of Conſtantinople, your ſiſter is baniſhed out of the Emperors Court and Dominions, and but for the great mercy of the Lords of the Emperours Court, and others, ſhee had been publikely put to death and burnt to aſhes, in the ſight of all the people.

King Pepin having heard the lamentable relation of Blandimans report, being exceeding out-ragious and fierce in anger (and yet ſorrowfull withall) braſt out in ſpeech moſt bitterly againſt her on this manner: Now by the Gods quoth he I hold the Emperor no brzight Iudge, in that hee ſpared the life of my Siſter: for I ſweare, that if I had her heere now in my poſſeſſion I would not reſt, till by death I have made her an example vnto all falſe Ladies while the world endureth: and therewithall, commanded all his Traine of Lords and others to ſtay their fury going forward, and make their returne backe againe to Paris, for the grieuous offences of my Siſter here ſtayes my Iourney, and ſo he departed, without further asking any more Queſtions, but turning his horſe head, ſorrow ouer-came his courage, and at the laſt made him breake forth into theſe words. Ha (quoth he) how many men are deceiued in Women? Now am I vtterly preuented of all my purpoſes, for my only hope reſted in the modeſtie of my Siſter Bellyſant, yea, and in her ſtood all my hopes and pleaſure. Againe, to haue had the Emperor Alexander ſtill my Brother, and faſt friend at all aſſayes, and in all my neceſſities, was my onely hope and top of heart, and now behold by her I am diſappointed, defamed, and ſhut out into eternall diſhonour. And ſo in that diſtruſt and melancholy, King Pepin returned againe towardes Orleance. When Blandimain perceiued the courage of the King to be thus

daunted.

daunted, he durſt relate no further newes of his Lady Bellyſant, but leaving the King tooke his way towards the tree, where he lately left her in great paine of Child-birth: being thither come, he ſought her every where, but could heare no tidings of her: wherefore being ſorrowfull, he knew not what way to take.

Being in this ertaſie at laſt he tide vp his horſe to a thorny tree, and beganne againe to make a narrower ſearch then before, wherein he was ſo vigilant, that anon he eſpied her, finding her flat vpon the earth, in a manner ſpeechleſſe, for very griefe of heart, that ſhe had loſt her Child, which the Beare had violently borne away from her. Blandimaine being glad, that now at laſt hee had found her, kindly imbraced her, and taking her vp in his armes from off the cold earth, ſet her vpon her feet, and began thus vnto her: Alas (deare Lady and Miſtreſſe) how happened you to ſtray thus farre from the place I left you in.

The Ladie looking vpon him with a gaſtly countenance, replied thus: Ha Blandimaine, my dolours and diſtreſſes daily increaſe vppon mee. For thou wert no ſooner departed to get mee the helpe of ſome woman kinde, but I being delivered of Two Babes, a ravenous Beare from forth the Forreſt aſſailed me, and bare away one of them. I, although weake, making what poore ſhift I was able, followed that ravenous beaſt, thinking by ſtrong hand to have recovered againe my loſſe, but all in vaine. I could not ouer-take the Beare, nor wanting my ſtrength recover backe againe to the Tree, where I left my other infant. Lady (quoth he) the other Infant? why I my ſelfe but lately came from the Tree, and I am well aſſured that there lay no Infant there, nor nearely thereabout. How (quoth the Lady) no Child vnder the Tree? With theſe words ſhee was ſo inwardly wounded, that ſhee fell downe in a ſwoond, which Blandimaine eſpying, ſaved her (in what he could) and fell into bitter teares for griefe and ſorrow, to ſee his Ladie ſo extreamly plunged and overwhelmed, and at laſt led her toward the Tree, where ſhe had left her Child, but when ſhe ſaw that other Child alſo gone, thinke then what dolour of heart ſhe the poore Ladie endured: in middeſt of all which ſorrowes, ſhe thus beſpake:

Alas (quoth ſhee) can there be in the world a more deſolate wretch on every ſide compaſſed with griefe, yea, and all inſupportable ſorrowes? but alas Emperor, thou art the cauſe, and haſt beene the onely meanes to deliver me even to Death, and that wrongfully without cauſe on my part, and only by deceivable counſell haſt thou bereft mee of thy Company: But heere I call all the Gods to witneſſe, that I was never faulty vnto thee in my body, nor diſobedient vnto thee in any point: wherefore once againe I am forced to cry out for vengeance vpon the offenders head; whoſoever. Firſt, for my diſgrace, next, for my Baniſhment, and now laſtly for the loſſe of my two Babes, iſſued from the blood Royall of the Emperour of Conſtantinople. But ſeeing all theſe miſeries have even tyred themſelves vpon my very heart, ſome Death and finiſh what ſorrowes do but prolong. All this while Blandimain was an eare-witneſſe of al theſe pittious plaints, inſomuch as he grew even weary of her waylung, and in the beſt manner he could comforted her dying Spirits, by falling to intreat her, that ſhe would ſome-what give over her mones, and betake her ſelfe to her reſte: Whereunto ſhe giving conſent, he accompanied with the Woman he had brought with him, came vnto a neighboring village, whereas they lodged and nouriſhed her, till ſhee had ſome-thing recovered her ſtrength, and in ſome meaſure forgotten the depth of her miſeries. Blandimaine beganne to breake with his Ladie on this manner: Lady (quoth he) it was my chance in looſing you in the woods, to light vpon your Brother King Pepin, who demanded of me what tidings, but his browes were bent and full of anger againſt you: wherefore Lady my counſell is, that you make not towards him, for by that countenance I well perceive you ſhall have but ſlender Welcome. For vpon further queſtions demaunded and anſwered, ſo ſoone as he heard me tell that the Emperour had exiled you, he lightly gave credit that his was the fault, and therefore he layes all the blame on you. Ha (quoth the Ladie) now what I moſt feared is come to paſſe, and I well perceive that I am beſet with adverſaries on every ſide. Well be it as it may bee, the Emperor hath exiled mee without cauſe, what then ſhall I doe? I will never returne againe to Paris,

but

but take my way into ſome remote Land, where my body with my faults ſhall be ſmoothered: For my Brothers anger is growne ſo great, that he could willingly deliver me over to death, therfore it is better to flie and ſo to ſave my life, then fall into the fury of ſo angrie a Brother. This dolefull ſpeech ſhee delivered in teares, which Blandimain perceiving, ſayd unto her: Lady leave off your teares, for be you aſſured of my faithfull ſervice, and heare I offer my ſelfe, life, and all to be at your diſpoſe, goe whether you pleaſe. Why then (quoth the Ladie) ſince thou art ſo reſolute, let us reſolve upon ſome ſtrange aduenture, and therewithall paſſed forth to expoſe themſelues to future dangers, where now we ſhall be forced to leave them with ſorrowfull hearts, and returne againe to ſpeake ſomething of the Beare, that caried away one of the Children.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Beare that bare away one of the Ladies Children.

THE Beare (as you heard before) that had carryed away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no violence, but bare it unto her Cave, which was darke and obſcure. In this Cave the Old Beare had foure young ones, amongſt whom ſhee layd the Childe to bee devoured: but marke the chance and you ſhall finde it at laſt miraculous, for all this while the young Beares did it no harme, but

but with their rough pawes ſtroaked it ſoftly. The old Beare perceiving they did not devoure it, ſhewed a Bearish kind of favour toward it, insomuch that shee kept it, and gave it ſucke among her yong ones the ſpace of one whole yeare. This Child, by reaſon of the nutriment it received from the Beare, became rough all over like a beaſt, and as he grew in ſtrength, began to range up and downe in the woods, and when he met with other beaſts would ſmite them, and get ſuch maſtery over them, that they began to ſhun the place wherein he came, he was ſo extreame fierce amongſt them: and in this beaſt-like eſtate paſſed he the Tearm of 10. yeares, growing up to ſuch ſtrength, that ſcarce any man or Beaſt in the Foreſt durſt ſtirre abroad, fearing to fall into his hands, leaſt he ſhould put them to death, and after eate their fleſh more like unto a ravenous beaſt, then any humane Creature. His

name

name was called Orſon, becauſe a Beare had been his nurſe, and alſo became rough like a Beare.

This Beare-man lived ſo long in the Foreſt that none (were he never ſo hardy) durſt abide his preſence. The renowne of this wild-man grew ſo great, and ſpred ſo far abroad over all the Realme of France, that they of the Country round about chaſed and hunted him, but prevailed not, for he neither feared weapons nor Engines, but paſſed through all, ſnapping them in peeces. All this time he abode in the Foreſt, you muſt underſtand, he neither ware Garment, nor had any uſe of ſpeech.

Here we leave the wild-man in the Foreſt, and looke a little what became of the Lady Belliſant, and her ſeruant Blandimaine, and we ſhall ſuddenly find them wandring and travelling through divers Lands and Countries, the Lady ever remembring and bewailing the loſſe of her two Children, wiſhing that it were poſſible, they might be ſtill in ſafety: But in the midſt of her ſorrowfull wiſhes, yet ſhe paſſed on her weary Journey, ſometime by Sea, ſomtime by Land, till at length ſhee came to a Port in Portugall, on the which did ſtand an invincible Caſtle, kept by a Gyant called Ferragus, ſo great, and of ſuch puiſſance, that there was not a Horſe to bee found could beare the living Trunke of this great Gyant.

It ſo hapned at this Caſtle, that every ſhip that paſſed by this Port, was to pay tribute to this Gyant, which hee himſelfe did daily come aboord to receive. At length he came into the ſhip wherein the Lady Bellyſant, and her Squior had paſſed (for ſhee was laden with all manner of rich Marchandizes) ſo caſting his eyes about he eſpied Bellyſant, which he kindly tooke by the hand, and led her into the Caſtle to his Wife (for he was marryed to a beautifull Lady) Blandimain followed his Lady alſo, fearing the Gyant, but he behaved himſelfe ſo nobly, that hee did not offer her any violence but preſented her to his Wife who received her gladly, and had great Joy at the gracious preſence of ſo beautifull a Lady. The Gyant gave charge to his Wife, to uſe her honourably, and Blandimaine her Squior. During her abode in the Caſtle, ſhee would often ſhed teares, when ſhee bethought her of

the

of the loſſe of her two Children, which the Lady of the Caſtle perceiving, would often comfort her in the beſt manner ſhee could, and ever placed her next her owne perſon, for the ioy and pleaſance that ſhee ever tooke in her company. Within this Caſtle ſhe tarried ſome long time, and here we muſt leabe her, and now wee will returne backe againe to tell you ſomewhat of the Emperour of Conſtantinople, and the falſe Arch-Prieſt.

CHAP. VII.

How by the Counſell of the Arch-Prieſt, new Cuſtomes and Taxations were raiſed throughout the City of *Conſtantinople*, and how the Treaſon came to light.

ALexander the Emperour, having ſhamefully expelled Bellyſant his wife, Siſter to King Pepin, oftentimes repented him of the fact: but by the curſed counſell of the Arch Prieſt, vnto whoſe words the Emperour gabe ſuch credit continually, that what he ſpake was an Oracle in the eares of the ſayd Emperour, Inſomuch as he continually heaped new honours vpon that traiterous Prieſt, aduancing him even abobe the higheſt of his Empire, and whatſoever he commanded, was effected. At laſt, having gotten all polwer and authority into his hands, he began to inhance the cuſtomes and tares of the City of Conſtantinople, which eraction of his againſt all reaſon, ſtroke euen to the very hearts of the Inhabitants. Among the reſidue of theſe his forced impoſitions, it happened that (according to their yearely cuſtomes) there was held a great Part in the City, which fals out about the Moneth of September. Herebnto reſorted many people for diuers occaſions, eſpecially Marchants. The Fayre or Part day being come, the Emperour gabe the charge thereof bnto this Arch-Prieſt, who accordingly prabided himſelfe, and to the ſame purpoſe armed 200 men to guard his perſon: being thus accompanied, hee tooke his way into the City, to effect this new charge which the Emperour had ſo lately beſtowed bpon him.

him. It chanced ſo, that among the reſt of them that ſold wares, the Marchant was there preſent, (of whome you have read before) namely, that Marchant that came riding by the way whilſt Blandimain (the Ladies Squior) and the Arch-Prieſt were fighting: The Arch-Prieſt perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearefull leaſt all his villanie ſhould now come to light. The preſence of this Marchant much troubled the Arch-Prieſt, inſomuch as he wiſhed (if it were poſſible) his death, and would aſſuredly have effected the ſame by the authority that he now had in his hand, but ſtill hee feared ſome great tumult would ariſe thereby. Now marke what followed: This Marchant among the reſt, was richly furniſhed with all rich and coſtly wares, as Cloath of Gold, Silver, Silks, &c. whereby hee received great wealth and tooke more money then any five Marchants beſide. The Faire being ended, the Arch-Prieſt ſent forth his Officers, to demand and receive the accuſtomed duties due upon the Sale of thoſe Marchandizes. The Officers came unto this Marchant and ſayd: Sir you muſt pay ten pence on every pound that you have taken, for ſo it is ordained by the great Officer to whom it doth belong.

The Marchant hereat being angrie, ſaid, Curſed be that diſloyall Arch-Prieſt, for he is the onely cauſe of theſe now raiſed exactions upon us: It had been good for all men, if he had long ſince had his deſert, and with ſhame and infamy had ended his dayes. At which reproachfull words againſt the Arch-Prieſt, the Officer tooke his ſtaffe, and ſmote the Marchant on the head, that preſently the blood guſhed out. Then the Marchant feeling the blood about his eares, drew his ſword, and ſtroke ſo hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his feete for dead. Upon this, aroſe a great rout throughout the Faire, inſomuch as the reſt of the Officers comming up to helpe their fellow, tooke the Marchant, and brought him before the Arch-Prieſt. The Arch-Prieſt glad of this opportunity, would ſuddenly have put him to death, but the Marchant appealed to Juſtice, to have his cauſe tryed by the Law. The Arch-Prieſt fearing the people, ſent him away to the Emperor, for nothing could ſatisfie him but his life: but marke, in ſeek-

ing

ing the life of the Marchant, he purchaſed his owne death, as hereafter followeth.

The Arch Prieſt cauſed the Marchant to be brought into the Emperours Pallace, whereas he in perſon ſate as Judge: The Emperor being ſet, the Arch-Prieſt then brought his Aduocate to plead his cauſe, which was to this effect, that the Marchant had committed murther, and alſo ſpoken many opprobrious words againſt the ſayd Arch-Prieſt. The Aduocate having ended his accuſation, the Marchant ſuddenly fell on his knees before the Emperor, and ſaid: Mighty and moſt excellent Prince, out of your benignity give mee but audience to be heard, before theſe your Nobles heere attending, and I ſhal vnfold a matter of ſo great importance, that it touches even your perſon in the higheſt degree of of Treaſon. Say on ſayd the Emperor. Mighty Emperor, and my Lords all, I would aduiſe you to make faſt the Gates round about this your Pallace, that none depart from this place. The Emperor did as he requeſted: Then ſayd the Marchant with a loud voice, Lords, Barons, and Knights, all you that love the honour of the Emperor, and the Triumphant raigne of his perſon, attend my words: For the time is come, that the Treaſon of the curſed Arch-prieſt, will now be revealed and come to light. Then thus great Emperor, this is that curſed man whome you have ever nouriſhed and brought to great honour, who hath deceived your truſt, for he it is that hath wrought all the diſcord betwixt you and your vertuous Lady whom you have baniſhed both from your Bed Court, and Countrey, and by whom you have received more diſhonor, then ever he reaped honour from you: For it hath been his part moſt of any, to have nouriſhed and advanced your renowne, and to have preſerued your honour, But contrarily hee hath made you my Dread Lord infamous by theſe his wicked prejects, and brought vpon you great ſcandall among all Nations: for he ſecretly and vnder-hand made love vnto your Empreſſe, but thee denied him: the which he perceiving, that there was no likelyhood to accompliſh his deſire, it drove him into a thouſand feares, leaſt this his diſloyall act ſhould come to light,: and therefore, deviſed to falſifie vnto your eares, her faithfull love vnto your Bed.

Of

Of all which his falſe accuſations, I ſay heere before you and all your Lords and Barons that he lyeth like a Traytor, and for the more approbation of what I have vttered, I will heere vnfold the truth of what theſe eyes of mine were witneſſes.

It ſo hapned on a day (after the Banishment of the Emmyeſſe Bellyſant) as I was riding about my affaires, I chaunced to travell through a Wood: at laſt, paſſing along the way, I found this treacherous Prieſt, transformed out of the habite of his Prieſthood, into the ſhape of a Knight, eben armed at all points ready for the combat with the enemy. Drawing neerer and neerer, I might behold him in fight with another man vnarmed, which at laſt I found to be Blandiman, Squior to the baniſhed Lady, who conducted her in the time of her exile.

I ſtill perceiving they encountred one another ſo fiercely, began, to call out vnto them, to give over this direfull fight: but they little regarding what I ſayd, I did perceive the Lady pitiouſly weeping, and at laſt ſayd vnto me thus: Gentle Marchant, and kind friend, lend me thy aid againſt this treacherous Arch-Prieſt, that ſeeketh by force to rob me of mine honour. This is hee, and onely hee, by whom I am baniſhed from my Emperors Bed and Country. With that I put ſpurs to my Horſe, and ran betweene them to ſeparate them, which this Arch-Prieſt perceiving, ſuddenly fled into the Wood, being fully aſſured that I had knowledge who hee was. Noble Emperor, it had been my part to have revealed this long before, but I durſt not open my mouth vnto you, for feare his greatneſſe would have out-ſwayed my truth, and ſo have brought my ſelfe to an vntimely Death.

The Emperor having heard this tale, ſighed, and at laſt fell into teares: in which teares hee turned him vnto the Arch-Prieſt, taxing his diſloyalty on this manner: Ha thou falſe ſeruant (quoth he) have I ever ſtudied to doe thee honour, and exalt thee to high Dignityes, and haſt thou quitted all my love and truſt with diſloyalty and treaſons? Well, I have ſeen now what I ever miſtruſted, Thou haſt made mee of all men the moſt vnhappy, But it is not ſo much thy fault as my own, thy Treaſon hath bewitched me. In an evill houre gave I credit to thy falſe ſpeaking tongue,

and

and thereby deſerve to carrie the brand of mine owne folly.

The Arch-Prieſt hearing the Emperor thus diſtempered, began to intreat his highneſſe not to be ſo impatient, neither to give credit to this ſlanderous tale that the Marchant had commenced againſt him: for (quoth he) he belyeth me, & I am no way guilty of that wherewith he acculeth me. Thou lieſt falſely (quoth the Marchant) thou canſt not excuſe thy ſelfe in what I have charged thee withall, and if thou ſtand ſtill unto the denial, I Challenge thee by ſingle Combate, to maintaine the truth, and fry my quarrell: and hereupon, I throw downe my gage, and withall tender my body thereunto, for to make good what I have heere ſpoken: and more then that ere night ſhut in, I will deliver thy body either to death, or yeeld my ſelfe vanquiſhed.

The Emperor ſeeing the Marchant ſo reſo'ute, and to ſtand to the triall of the Combat, he ſayd: Arch-Prieſt, it is time, that either thou quite thy ſelfe by anſwering this Challenge, or to yeeld thy ſelfe guilty of what hath been laid unto thy charge. The Arch-Prieſt replyed on this manner: Mighty Emperor, I muſt let you underſtand, that to anſwere the Marchants Challenge, or to take up Armes is contrary to my place or calling, for I am a ſacred Prelate of the Church, and therefore I may refuſe to fight. Nay (quoth the Emperor) in this caſe no excuſe is to be admitted, but you muſt either fight, or yeeld your ſelfe a Traitor to our Crowne and dignity. At theſe words the Arch-Prieſt was ſomewhat troubled in mind, yet at laſt hee was faine to accept the Combat becauſe the Emperour charged him ſo deepely: and beſides, he could have no excuſe admitted. So the Emperor commanded them both to ſafe keeping, till ſuch time as he had ſent Letters to King Pepin of France. But in concluſion the Traytor had his deſart, as heereafter followeth.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Emperour by the Counſell of his Nobility ſent for King *Pepin*, to ſee the Combate fought between the Arch-Prieſt, and the Marchant.

THE day of the Combat was appointed, and the Field prepared, tydings came vnto the Emperour, that King Pepin was come to Rome, to the aid of the Pope againſt the Infidels. The Emperor hearing thereof, by the graue Counſell of the Lords, diſpatched Ambaſſadors thither, with command to bring King Pepin to Conſtantinople, meaning therby to make him an eye witneſſe of theſe contentions, and of the cauſe of this Combat, which was to try the Arch Prieſt a traytor, and alſo to hold the Emperor excuſed in that he had by his falſe accuſations banished his Empreſſe. The Ambaſſadors thus diſpatched, you muſt imagine, that after long trauell, at laſt they came to Rome where as they found King Pepin, as before is told them. King Pepin having heard of their comming, gaue them entertainement appertaining to their ſeuerall degrees: all which being done the Ambaſſadors thus ſpake vnto King Pepin. Great Lord, we preſent theſe Letters from Alexander the Brother, Emperor of Conſtantinople, our Lord and Maſter, to which we entreat a ſpeedy anſwer. King Pepin tooke the Letters graciouſly and read them: and hauing throughly conſidered the contents, with a loud voice he ſaid: My Lords (by the Gods) here is much matter of wonder and alſo of as great admiration. The Emperor Alexander greets mee well, and ſends me word that my Siſter Bellyſant his betroathed wife, hath been by him wrongfully banished, and that by truſt in which Prieſt for theſe his treaſonable facts is accuſed by a Marchant, & for tryall of the truth of this his accuſation, will put himſelfe in ieopardy of life, by ſingle combat in open field body to body, with this treacherous Arch-Prieſt. Now it is to ſaine out, that the day & place is ready for the tryall of this fact, whereby I ſhall be

fully ſatisfied whether my Siſter hath been guilty of that where-with ſhee hath been charged, and moſt ſhamefully caſt forth into baniſhment. Upon all which I vow by my Crowne and Dignity, that if the Emperor be found to have offered her this indignity, without juſt cauſe, that I will be avenged againſt him in the extreameſt manner that war ſhall thunder forth againſt him. Having ended his ſpeech vnto his Lords, in the preſence of the Ambaſſadors, he commanded that with ſpeed, every man ſhould addreſſe himſelfe, to accompany him to Conſtantinople, to behold the manner of this fight between the Marchant and the Arch-Priеſt.

The day of his departure from Rome being come, hee takes his way toward Conſtantinople, where after ſome few daies of travell, he ſafely arrived. The Emperour hearing of his comming, commanded all the Bells to be rung, and made Triumphs to Welcome him, for all were filled with joy at his approach. The Emperor mounted on Horſe-back richly accompanied, marched out of the City to meete his Brother King. At laſt they met, but the Emperor overcome with ſorrow and teares at the remembrance of Bellyſant, could not vtter a word. On the other ſide, Pepin being fiercely angred, at what he pined to his Siſter, gave no reſpect vnto the Emperors teares, but proudly began to gird him on this manner. Emperour (quoth he) leave off theſe your lamentations, and ſhake off theſe weeds of ſorrow that you ſeeme to weare for my ſiſter Bellyſant: For he that hath a Harlot vnto his wife, I account him mad to greeve at her misbehaviour: and ſince my ſiſter hath proved ſuch a one, let her goe and take care for her ſelfe, ſhee is not worthy of ſo much as one teare from ſuch an eye of Majeſty.

Nay, nay, ſaid the Emperor, ſpeak not you ſo evilly againſt your ſiſter, for I am now fully perſwaded, that ſhe is compoſed of all vertue and true honeſty, and that againſt all equity, I have baniſhed her out of my Country. Thinke you ſo now (quoth K. Pepin:) Then thou art worthy of a double ſhame, and you do bewray vnto the world your weakneſs, and what great fooliſhneſſe remaineth in you, when as by the report of one man, and that a Traitor too, you would with ſuch rigour proceed againſt an Innocent lady, and ſo ſuddenly (like a common harlot) throw her out into baniſh-

ment:

ment, ſhame and diſhonour, being of the blood Royall of France. The Emperor hearing the king to be ſo bitter againſt him, he was very ſorrowfull and ſaid vnto him in this manner: Alas (my Lord) do not thus follow me in wrath and anger, but rather turne your tongue vpon ſome milder ſaying: for to that intent haue I ſent for you, that your owne eyes may be a witneſſe of the truth. It is true (quoth King Pepin) but it is all too late what now you ſay, for you haue deliuered ouer my ſiſter into the worlds infamy, and that more is, euen to baniſhment, and (for ought I know) to death it ſelfe, for I know not whether I ſhall euer behold her face againe or not. Fie, fie, that you being ſo great a Perſon, ſhould be ſo affectionately borne away, to giue ſuch ſudden iudgment againſt an Innocent, I do confeſſe, one may commit a fonle and diſhonorable act, but repentance is able to make amends, and not ſo ſuddenly to ouerthrow their dignity and renowne: For that once loſt, whether it be by right or wrong, it is neuer againe poſſible to be recouered. Againe, how little haue you eſteemed of the honour of my kingly office, iudge you, when firſt without deliberation, and next without any knowledge giuen me, you haue proceeded ſo againſt my Siſter, makes it playne againſt you, that emy towards her and mee, was the onely cauſe of theſe falſe and vniuſt wrongs done againſt vs. Whilſt theſe words paſſed betwixt them, they were now entred Conſtantinople, where with great ioy and gladneſſe they were receiued of the Inhabitants. The Emperor would haue had King Pepin to haue lodged with him in his Pallace, but the king denied and cauſed his Traine to lodge within the City, and hee himſelfe alſo. Then the Emperour cauſed many gifts and preſents to bee offered him, but he diſdainfully reiected them: for King Pepin thought of nothing but the diſhonour done vnto his Siſter, and the rather, for that the whole City accounted her the fayreſt, the moſt vertuous, and the chaſteſt Lady in all the world, and that by iniuſtice, and treaſon ſhe was ſo baniſhed.

CHAP. IX.

¶ How the Marchant and the Arch-Priest encountred at the place appoynted, about the clearing of the Lady *Bellysant*, and what a glorious victory did betyde the Marchant.

AND it was the day appointed come for the combat betweene the Arch-Priest and the Marchant: wherefore, every thing was made in readinesse, according to the commaund of the Emperor. At last, there came both the Combatants into the field, and presented themselues before the Emperor. Being both before the Emperor, the Attendants, (Knights and other) vpon the Arch-Priest, armed in a most sumptuous Armor of Proofe, all imbost with Gold and Pearle, which made such a glittering shew, that it euen dazled the eyes of the beholders. Being thus richly armed the Arch Priest came forthinto the field, and tooke his place appointed him, at the one end of the Lists appointed for that purpose. The Emperor beholding the glorious shew that the Arch priest made in his armes, called forthe Marchant, causing him first to kneele down and in the presence of the Assembly dubbed him Knight: Then commanded he, that a most rich Armor should be put vpon him in the presence of the Emperor, who during the time he was arming, promised vnto this Marchant, if he ouer-came the Arch-Priest, to aduance him to great liuings, and high authority. These two aduersaries being now in readinesse, and each having his Blazon about his necke their Horses were brought forth and they proudly mounted, ready to giue battell: the Emperor gaue straight charge vnto all his Officers of Armes to haue a speciall eye vnto the Arch-Priest for feare least he on the sudden should fly the field, or run away from them, as they would answer it with their liues. The Marchant thus mounted, & his sword giuē to him, first entred the Lists, after whom ysſued such abundance of people, that they were numberlesse. Then after came the Arch-Priest, sumptuously accompanied with Nobles and knights of great honour and dignity. The Combatants thus both entred the Lists, ready to charge one th'other: King Pepin was there in person, called out aloud vnto

vnto the Marchant, ſaying vnto him; My friend the Gods giue thee victory againſt this falſe traytor. I bow vnto thee heere before this great aſſembly (ſo I may but find out the truth of my Siſter Bellyſans) notwithſtanding the great aduancement that the Emperour hath promiſed, to take thee into France, and make thee companion with the beſt in my Kingdome. The Marchant gaue the King great thanks, and ſaid: Dread king, I doubt not but this night to make this traiterous Prieſt confeſſe that he hath treacherouſly ſought the deſtruction of your Siſter, Then came a Herault adminiſtring to them both an oath, and ſo clearing the Liſts, left the Champions to their fortunes.

Now are both the Combatants ready to ſet forth, and the Marſhals of the field brought each of them a Speare, which they no ſooner had received, but they put Spurs to their Horſes, and ran

with ſuch violence, together that their Speares were broken to their hands. Then they beganne to ſet forward to another courſe, charging each other with their Swords, in ſuch violent manner, that with their fury they rebounded from their Armor to ỹ ground cutting off whole quarter of their Coiſlets, and left them as a prey for thoſe that attended the fight.

The Arch-Priеſt ſeeing himſelfe ſo ſtiffely matched gave over the fight, till towards the Evening (for ſuch was the Cuſtome of the Countrey, that if any challenged Combate, either party might refuſe to follow the fight ſo eagerly, but that they might have a breathing time, ſo the Combat were yeelded banquiſhed before Sun-ſet, or elſe abide the ſentence of death) thinking thereby to weary out the Marchant. Which the Marchant being privy unto, ſo behaved himſelfe, that he prepared to receive the Arch-Priеſt couragiouſly when he encountred him: inſomuch that when they came together to make tryall of their valor, and to get conqueſt the one over the other: the Marchant ſo redoubled his ſtroakes, that at laſt he ſwote off one of his eares, and his Steele Habergion, and with the violence of the ſame blow, the Marchants ſword fell from his hand. The Arch-Priеſt perceived his enemy unarmed, he put ſpurs to his Horſe and charged him with ſuch violence that hee ran againſt the Marchants Horſe, and thruſt out one of his eyes, the Horſe feeling himſelfe hurt ran by and downe as mad, leaping and curuetting ſo furiouſly, that he unhorſt his rider, and ſo hard was the fortune of the Marchant, that in his fall, his foote hung faſt in the ſtirrop whereby he was brought into great danger, the Horſe hurrying him along the field, that all were very ſorrowfull to behold this lamentable ſpectackle, and with the amazement thereof, grew deſperate in their hopes. King Pepin alſo was ſore diſcouraged at this diſaſtrous chance, that the teares did even trickle downe his cheekes, and in a ſilent ſpeech to himſelfe thus he ſpake. Alas Marchant I now well perceive thy dayes are at an end, and that the truſt I repoſed in thee is utterly fruſtrate, for by thy fall I ſee my Siſters chaſtity to be weake, and the rather, for that the Gods have ſuffered thee to fall ſo unluckily this day, ſo that I muſt needs confeſſe, that the Emperour hath done well in expul-

erpulſing her his Kingdome: Oh, that her day of birth had proved her day of buriall, it had beene happy for her, but thrice happier to me, for onely by her is the blood-Royall of France brought into great infamy: and were it ſo, I had her at my diſpoſe, I would be the firſt man ſhould ſee execution done vpon her, even to death. Now, that which was ſo miraculous, was, that all this time that the Marchant was dragged vp and down the field the Arch-Priеſt could not enforce his Horſe to come in vpon the Marchant, but flew out too and fro whereby he could not make prey vpon the Marchant, as he thought to have done. But ſee at laſt the Marchants Horſe that had thus drawne him vp and downe the field ſounded and fell downe, which gave great aduantage to the Marchant, and with that fall got his legge from forth the ſtirrop, & at laſt got vp on his feet, like a valiant and hardy Champion. The Arch-Priеſt perceiving the Marchant had recovered his legges came running with ſtrong violence vpon him, and therby lent him fiue or ſixe ſore blowes vpon the head and ſhoulders, that the poore Marchant was euen aſtonied. At laſt, he was forced to give backe to recouer breath, which euen a little ſpace, and finding himſelfe ſomewhat relieved, he ſubtlely and fiercely gave a freſh aſſault vpon the Arch-Priеſt, againſt whom he ſtroke with ſuch violence that the ſword fell out of his hand, but hee had firſt ſo wounded the Arch-Priеſt that the Blood ran quite through his Armor vpon the earth. This ſo vered the Arch-Priеſt that he grew mad with rage, and turned his Horſe vpon the Marchant, minding to haue ouerrunne him with his Horſe. But the Marchant perceiving his drift, prepared to receiue him, and therewithall drew a long knife, and panched it in the belly of the Horſe, ſo that the Horſe being thus wounded, began to fling and leape, inſomuch as the Arch-Priеſt was in danger to be vnhorſt, and doing what he could to ſaue himſelfe, he loſt his Shield. The Marchant eſpying him thus vnarmed, ran haſtily and caught vp the ſhield, and threw it away, ſo that he could no more recouer it: that done he made againe towards his Horſe and ſmote him into the Belly with his Sword, ſo that by this time, both his horſe and his rider, came tumbling downe vpon the ground.

The Arch-Priest being thus unhorst, was very nimble to recover himselfe, but yet the Marchant watching all opportunity, lent him such a blow, that as hee began to rise he laid him flat again upon the ground, and then leaping upon him, pulled off his Helmet, thinking to have smitten off his Head when the Arch-Priest saw himselfe thus vanquished, he was exceeding wrath but seeing little availed hee said thus unto the Marchant: Alas, my Friend, I beseech thee take mercy upon mee, and while I am yet living, give mee sometime to confesse my selfe, that I may free my Soule of danger, for to thee I yeeld my selfe as vanquished. The Marchant hearing him say so, was very courteous, and granted him his desire. The Priest had no sooner gotten on his feet but he forsooke his confession, and suddenly got the Marchant in his armes, and threw him on the ground, and leapt upon him in most sudden outrage, saying thus to the Marchant I have thee now at advantage, and from my hands thou shalt not escape with life, if what I shall command thee thou doe not effect. Ha, replied the Marchant, hast thou thus betrayed mee. Well, it is so that now I stand at thy mercy, and that thou maist do with me what pleaseth thee: therefore let me know what it is thou commandest, and so thou save my life, I shall gladly doe it. Then thus: go with me before the Emperour and King Pepin, and there openly in the hearing of all men, confesse, that thou falsely hast accused mee, and that thereby I may be cleared of all those false calumniations, which by thy meanes hath been brought upon mee: all which if thou effectually accomplish, I sweare and promise thee to save thy life, and besides bee a meane unto the Emperor and his Brother, to buy thy peace & forgiveness of this thy foule fact committed both against me and them also. May more, I sweare to thee by the faith of a Gentleman, and by the order of a Priest hood, to give thee a Neece of mine in marriage, who shall bee unto thee, rich, faire, and of pleasant behaviour: and to conclude, thou shalt say more then any of thy kindred ever could, thou shalt be made both more honourable and wealthy: Therefore now awake thy wits, whether thou will bee made happy in an honourable life, or miserable in an untimely Death. The Marchant having

having heard all the Arch-Priests tale, was vppon the sudden exceeding sorrowfull and not without cause, but not knowing on the sudden what to resolue vpon, he at length thus answered. Sir Priest your Arguments are grounded vpon good reasons; therefore I am ready to accomplish your desires, so that you will be as mindfull of your Oathes and promises. In me quoth the Arch-Priest there shall appeare no fault. Why then (quoth the Marchant) let vs set forward toward the Emperor and there will I set you free from all those accusations which heretofore I have exhibited against you It is well sayd the Arch-Priest wherefore rise vp then, and let vs goe together. The Marchant had no sooner got on his feet, but hee began againe afresh to open all the Treason of the Arch-Priest, even to his teeth, and againe hee tooke courage, and now would requite him in the same sawce he had serued him before: and suddenly clasping the Arch-Priest in his armes, he threw him downe, and having him at aduantage, he said thus: Arch-Priest, you have taught me to play my part, and therfore thinke no more vpon confessions, for you shall confesse to me or none. The Arch-Priest seeing himselfe beaten at his own weapon, began againe to intreat, but the Marchant not regarding his words, presently put out his eyes; And gave him so many deadly blowes, ẏ he made him sure enough for rising to do him any harme.

Then the Marchant called the marshals of the field, and sayd, Loe, here you may see, that I have done my best endeavour against the Arch-Priest, and if hee be vanquished, say so, for I am sure I have brought him to that passe: that I may kill him out-right if I please. Therefore my request now vnto you is, that you would conduct Alexander the Emperour of Constantinople, and Pepin King of France hither to this place, accompanied with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be care-witnesses of the Confession which this Arch priest shall make vnto them, & also to heare in what vnjust manner he waged this combat against me.

The Marshals did according to the request of the Marchant; and then presently came King Alexander the Emperor, with King Pepin, and all their Nobles, even to the place where the Arch-Priest lay all sorrowfull and fully vanquished. Then the Emperor

deman-

demanded of him the truth of the matter, which the Arch-Prieſt confeſſed declaring the whole plot of his villanies, and how by this meanes the Lady Bellyſant had been wrongfully Baniſhed. When the ſtanders by heard all the whole matter, a multitude of teares were ſhed on every ſide, but eſpecially by the Emperour, for his lamentations were ſo violent, that all that were about him wept with great bitternes and harty ſorrow. Now, if the Emperour were ſo ſorrowfull what may you think of King Pepin her brother, alas it was not without great cauſe when they ſaw and knew that by too much truſt given to a trecherous Prieſt, they had loſt the vertuous Lady Bellyſant. Between theſe two great Princes, there was great joy, and great ſorrow: Joy to King Pepin, that his Siſter was found Innocent and blameleſſe: Sorrow to the Emperor that he ſhould be the onely meanes (by falſe ſuggeſtions) of his wives baniſhment.

At laſt, lamentations were laid apart: when they had heard all the confeſſion of the Arch-Prieſts Treaſons, the Emperor conſulted with his counſell what death the Traitor ſhould be put vnto. a Caldron of hot burning Oyle, quicke, and ſo finiſh his miſerable daies, as he had Traiterouſly ſought the life of that Innocent Lady: So the execution was ſuddenly to be done, and it being done, the aſſembly of people of all ſorts was diſmiſſed.

Afterward King Pepin withdrew himſelfe towards his lodging, but the Emperour ſorrowfull. for what had happened, came before King Pepin, and humbling himſelfe at his feet, began thus to ſay. Alas deere Brother I am all ſorrowfull for this my errour, in that I have ſo raſhly committed ſuch a deteſtable crime againſt you, my Lady your Siſter, and the reſidue of theſe great Nobles your attendants. Let it ſuffice, that I behold my own folly, what ſhall I ſay: I can but crave pardon for my fault, and give my ſelfe into your hands, to doe to me what ever pleaſeth you: and for a further ſatisfaction, I render vp into your hands my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining: for I am altogether vnworthy to rule an Empire, that am not maſter of mine owne affections. Take it I ſayd, for I will no longer be ſerved, but during the reſt of my life will become a Servant to thee or any: for

no

no better have I deſerued. King Pepin perceiuing the Emperor ſo paſſionate and ſo humbly minded, kindly tooke him from the ground, and before all his Lords freely forgaue all treſpaſſes. So that before they parted, there was a generall peace concluded on both parties betweene them, and a moſt ſpeedy courſe taken, to ſend abroad into all parts of the world to ſeeke out the diſtreſſed Lady, Bellyſant. Thus all things ſetled in an order, King Pepin prepared to take his leaue of the Emperor, and ſo returned backe againe into his owne Country.

CHAP. X.

How King *Pepin* returned from *Conſtantinople*, into *France*, and after ſayled to *Rome*, to fight againſt the *Saracens* that had ſurprized the City.

KIng Pepin hauing taken his leaue from Conſtantinople, (as you haue heard) after a louing journey, arriued in France, and ſo to Orleance, to refreſh his long and tyred ſpirits, tolled too and fro in melancholly and heauy cogitations, for the woefull miſchances befalne vnto his Siſter Bellyſant. Being thus lately arriued and ſeated at Orleance, the King was right ioyfull that at the laſt he had attained the place that he ſo much deſired by reaſon that it was one of the goodlieſt Forreſts in the Realme of France. Being (as I ſaid) come hither, he cauſed great banquets to be made for his Welcome home: which was accordingly perſormed.

In the midſt of their Feaſtings and Reuellings, the Eſquior that had the charge of the Dayphant Valentine, tooke and preſented him before the King, ſaying vnto his Maieſty, on this manner: Dread Soueraigne, lo, heere I preſent before you, the poore Dayphant that your Maieſty found in the Forreſt of Orleance, and the ſame Child which you commanded me to ſee brought vp, not at mine

mine expence Dread Soveraigne, but at your owne. My Liege, the reason why I make tender of him unto you at this time, is, for that he is growing into many estate, and so it may please your Maiesty, it is time to dispose of him as you please. The King having heard the words of this Squire, called this Orphant (prieped Valentine) unto him, and tooke him by the hand, and moved divers questions unto him, al which he answered with much modesty, and great wisedome, and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his Cupbord of Plate should be given unto him. Moreover (said the King) I command that this Orphant Valentine be deerely preserved and kept, for that you shall perceive I respect him above common love, I will also, that this infant shall be nourished and kept with my Daughter Eglantine, shee is both faire, wise, and well endowed with all the richest gifts of Nature.

The King having given this command, it was accordingly accomplished, insomuch as they were both under the governement of one and the same Nurse, and had all one and the same attendants, yea, every way they joyed one in the company of the other, in such wise, that if the one were but a little absent from the other, there was a kind of lamentation till they came together againe, but especially the Kings Daughter, who pondering on the comely carriages of the Orphant, that shee became in love with him, insomuch as his absence brought upon her a thousand teares, and drave her melancholly thoughts into a thousand doubts.

Now Valentine was ever practising himselfe in feats of Armes, as Horse, Armor, Justs, and Tournaments, still opposing himselfe in all dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the inclination of the youth, allotted unto him what his heart desired, furnished him with Armor, Horse, Lands, Revenewes, and made him Lord of rich possessions. Being thus furnished, there arose within the Court many secret mutterings, whereby many fretted to sore in envie toward him, ꝑ they uttered forth many reproachful words against him, saying, that when he was at the best, he was but a found stray, poore, base, without any knowne parents or friends, of no gentle or noble stock, and such like: which when Valentine heard, he could take no other revenge, but sit him down

and

and weepe: whoſe teares faire Eglantine perceiving, would in a tender woman-like affection, accompany him, even pouring forth her teares alſo for company.

At length when he ſaw teares little avayled, he began to forſake it, and taking heart, beare himſelfe like a man, amioſt the greateſt in the Court, carrying himſelfe in ſuch humble and gentle frame, that he gained the love of all ſorts and degrees, as well Nobles, as inferiors.

Valentine thus growing vp in love of the Court, all this while his Brother Orſon runs in the Forreſt all rough and covered with haire like a Beare, and leading the life of a Beaſt, where we leave him for a while, and returne vnto the affaires of King Pepin. It ſo chanced, that there came vnto Orleance divers Ambaſſadors from the Pope demanding ayd againſt the Sarazens, enemies of the holy faith, who have lately taken the City of Rome by violence. King Pepin underſtanding hereof by certaine Letters received, addreſſed himſelfe and his powers to make reſiſtance againſt this common Enemie. And among the reſt of his worthy followers, he ordained this young Valentine a chiefe commander. Faire Eglantine hearing that Valentine ſhould make one, became wondrous heavy and ſorrowfull; for that ſhee loved him more then any other Creature, and ſecretly by ſtealth ſent a meſſenger vnto him to come and ſpeake with her: and when he came, ſhe ſighing, ſayd vnto him: Alas Valentine, my love, now am I quite bereft of all my joy, for I perceive you will betake your ſelfe to a dangerous warr. Gentle love, leave me not ſo deſolate: would to the Gods that I had neither father nor friend in the world to contradict my will, and then ſhouldſt thou ſoone perceive, how well my affection ſtands to thy perſon: for if wiſhes might availe, I ſweare (by the Gods) thou art the onely man I would joyne my ſelfe vnto in the bands of marriage, and then ſhouldſt thou be the King of France and I Queene. The young man hearing her idle imagination, ſayd, Madam leave theſe womanly dotages, you know I am no perſon fitting your eſtate, I am but a found ſtray that your Father hath cauſed long time to be nouriſhed for charity ſake. I am no way either fitting you, or the meaneſt Damoſell attending

your

your perſon. Make your choiſe elſe where, and ioyne Royall bloud vnto yours: and ſo with all dutie I take my leave, and commend you to the Gods Having thus ended his ſpeech away hee goes, leaving the poore Lady all heavy, deſolate, and in the midſt of mourning.

By this time, the King and all his powers were in a readines to depart, and taking their way from Orleance towards Rome, they went through a mighty Forreſt, and being entred, the King called his Lords and Barons together and ſayd thus vnto them. My Lords, it is not vnknowne vnto you, that in theſe woods (as report goeth) there liveth a ſtrange monſter, a Wild man, much feared of all paſſengers, which ſpectacle of mans ſhape, I long to behold, before I venter out any further vpon our intended voyage to Rome. The Lords generally conſented, and the chaſe was ſuddenly appointed Being entred the wood, they chaſed divers ſorts of Wild beaſts and overcame them: but as for Orſon the wild man, none durſt adventure the finding forth of him, ſave only his brother Valentine (but he knew nothing) and he followed ſtill the chaſe, hoping at laſt both to find and fight with him alſo. Every way they begirt the Wood, ſome one way, and ſome another: the King himſelfe ventred ſo far, that hee came before a Cave, darke and obſcure, whereas this Wild-man vſed to hide himſelfe. Orſon perceiving the King, ruſhed out vpon him, caught him within his naples (the which were long and crooked) and in rough and ravenous manner caſt him on the ground. The King thus ſuddenly ſurprized by a ſavage man, never lookt for life, but in pittious manner cried out for helpe, who was ſeconded by a valiant Knight at Armes, which eſpying the King to be almoſt ſtrangled, ſuddenly drew forth his ſword to have run the wild man through. Orſon perceiving the glittering ſword, left the King, and ran furiouſly vpon the Knight, tooke him in his armes that he overthrew him Horſe and all. The Horſe ſore affrighted, got vp againe, and in a mad fit ran vp and downe the Forreſt, but as for the rider (though a knight at Armes) Orſon held him ſo faſt with his fangs and Talents that at laſt he pulled him in peeces. In the meane ſpace the King eſcaped, and meeting part of his company, related to them

the

the great danger he had eſcaped, and the fearefull death of the knight. Theſe tydings much amazed the reſt of the company: yet being manfully reſolved, they ioyned themſelues together, and marched toward the Cave to meet with Orſon, and either to take him alive, or put him to death in the cave. But being come thither, they found the knigt dead and torne in peeces, but Orſon they could not find, (for the Gods had reſerved him to be conquered onely by his Brother Valentine: of whoſe proceedings you ſhall heare more hereafter.)

So the King perceiving their labour loſt, gave over the chaſe, and ſet forward toward Rome. After this, the King ranked his forces into battell ray, and the great Enſigne of France was giuen to one called Myllon Daugler a very valiant Prince, and a wiſe leader, ſo that he and his two brethren, Geruays, and Sampſon, had the whole Command of the Forces that then were marching towards Rome.

When they were come vnto Rome, King Pepin deſired battell, and would faine vnderſtand the eſtate that the City now ſtood in vnder the conqueſt of the Sarazens, but it was told him hee ſhould not be too inquiſitive of thoſe affaires: for the Admirall of the Sarazens had ſurpriſed the City, and put multitudes to the Sword, and had ſpoyled and defaced all the Churches, and made them Temples fit for their Heathenish Idols, and he conſtrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Arch-biſhops, Biſhops, Priors, Monks, Fryars, and all the Eccleſiaſticall perſons, for to ſerue at their Heathenish Altars, and to ſacrifice to their Devils, after the cuſtome of the Heathens.

When King Pepin vnderſtood heereof, he was much inraged, to heare that the Chriſtians were thus captiuated by heathens: wherefore he addreſſed himſelfe neerer vnto the City, and there having aſſembled all his forces, he began to draw them into divers Squadrons, meaning thereby to giue them a ſudden aſſault, for his fury was ſo great againſt theſe Heathenish Sarazens, that he vowed revenge vpon them: but taking better adviſe, he reſerved himſelfe and his Army for a ſeaſon: what after befell, ſhall be declared at large, when fit occaſion ſerueth our purpoſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

How King *Pepin* beſiedged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* Iuſted with the Admirall of the *Sarazins*, and ſlew him, wherby the City was releeved, and won agayne from the *Sarazins*.

Ing Pepin being thus come to Rome beſiedged it, and after ſome daies ſpent, he called about him his Barons, Knights, and mighty men of warre, and begon to ſpeake vnto them in this manner: My Lords and followers, you well know that this Heathenish Admirall, enemy to the Chriſtian faith and Church of Rome, hath put many Chriſtians to the Swoord, and violently trodden vnder foot all ſuch as withſtood his power: Therefore it is our duties to commiſerate their eſtate that are thus overthrowne, and to try the Fortune of a battell againſt thoſe Heathenish Pagans: and either drive them out of the City, or leave our dead carkaſſes as a pray as many have done before. Wherefore, I King Pepin reſting vpon this reſolution, would fayne find out a man to beare vnto the proud Admirall; a Letter of defiance in my name. King Pepin having finiſhed this ſpeech, there was none amongſt them made him any anſwere to his requeſt. At length Valentine ſeeing all ſtand mute, ſtepped forth before the Emperor, and began to ſpeake on this manner: Mighty Soveraigne: ſo you be pleaſed to give me leave, I ſhall vndertake the Meſſage, and ſhall no whit feare to ſpeake both vnto the Pagan Admirall, but to the whole Hoaſt of Pagans, were their multitude twice as many as they bee, and my returne ſhall make proofe that I habe done my Meſſage both with honour and advantage to your Maieſtie.

The king hearing Valentine thus forward, and of ſuch vndoubted and valiant reſolution, was right joyfull: and all thoſe of his Princely traine, greatly marvelled at this his magnanimious ſpirit. Herebpon the king called forth vnto him a Secretary willing him

him to draw a Letter of Defiance, and deliver the ſame to Valentine. Valentine prepared himſelfe thereunto, and no ſooner had he received the Letters, but he tooke leave of the King, and all his Traine. And being bravely mounted, he tooke his way towards Rome, and ſo to the Pallace where the Admirall lay. So comming thither he came before the Admiral, & ſaluted him after this manner: The Gods preſerue the noble and puiſſant King Pepin, my Lord and Soveraigne: and Mahomet whom thou ſerueſt, ſabe and defend the redoubted Admirall. When Valentine had thus ſpoken, the Admirall rowzed him from his Chayre, and with a fierce and frowning brow, replyed thus unto him, Meſſenger returne, and get thee gone out of my ſight, and ſay thus unto King Pepin: will him either renounce his faith, & beleeve on Mahomet, or elſe let him looke to receive no other ſentence then death, and ſo deſtroy him together with all his Lands and Kingdome. Get thee gone, and make here no longer abode, Go I ſay, reply not a word for my heart is all inraged, that ſo long I ſuffer thee.

Againe I tell thee, that for thy part, thou haſt committed a haughty enterprize, thus to enter my Pallace, to deliver any ſuch meſſage unto mee. Wherefore I aſſure thee, by the height of my Majeſty, if that I did aſſuredly know that what thou haſt done, were through pride of heart and inſolency, thereby to make a mocke at our majeſty, thou ſhouldeſt never return to King Pepin, to carry an anſwer of thy proud Maſters Letters. Valentine hearing theſe hot and furious words ſounding from the Admirall began to be afraid: wherefore deliberating with himſelfe what to reply, he mildly ſaid: High and mighty Emperour, doe not imagine that by pride or preſumption I am come before you, for when you ſhall underſtand the manner of my comming, you will be aſtonied thereat. Why then (quoth the Admirall) ſay on, tell vs how thou art come, for I ſweare by Mahomet, I ſhall take great pleaſure in hearing thee relate thine Enterpriſe. Then ſaid Valentine, ſir ſo it is, that I was accuſed to King Pepin for a Coward, and that ſince I came with him to this war, I would ſecretly have ſtolne away from the Camp and returned back again into France. For which (great Admirall) the King hath mee in great diſ-

grace, and bowed the next morning to ſmite off my head. I perceiving my ſelfe in this danger, ſought rather to ſave my life, than to looſe both life and honour, and therefore gave it forth throughout the Court, that I would undertake to come to your Court, to defie you on King Pepins behalfe: and therewithall that I would Challenge you to breake three Speares with you in ſingle combat to try your valiancy, and to win unto my ſelfe that loſt honour that before I told unto you: wherefore, my requeſt is, that your Greatneſſe would grant me this requeſt, otherwiſe I dare never returne againe, leaſt the King put me to death. The Admirall hearing this pittifull yet cunning tale of Valentines ſayd unto him: Son, I do ſweare by Mahomet thou ſhalt not be refuſed, but at this inſtant I offer thee the Juſts, and to the end that thoſe French men that lye in Siedge before this City, may have a ſight hereof, and ſee thy valor, I will ordayne the place of Juſting to be without the City. Valentine humbly thanked him, and in token of his acceptance and fained love, he fell downe and kiſſed the feet of the Admirall. Valentine grew up in great favour in the Admirals Court, but yet it often troubled his mind, that he never could underſtand who was his Parents: but the while hee beſtowed his wandring thoughts hereabout, the Admirall ſayd thus unto him: Faire Son, me thinkes you are very penſive and ſad. Tis true (quoth he) and not without cauſe, for I am much affraid that I ſhall bee ſlaine in theſe Juſts, wherefore my requeſt is, that I may have a Confeſſor to give me abſolution for my ſins. Then the Admirall commanded that a Prieſt ſhould be brought unto him. The Prieſt being come, ſaid unto Valentine, Now confeſſe you unto mee. Valentine getting the Prieſt aſide, and being together he ſayd thus unto him: Sir, you are a Chriſtian Prieſt, and above all other you ought moſt to defend the Chriſtian Faith: wherefore harken to that I ſhall tell you, for it is a thing requireth great ſecreſie. Thus it is, you know that this day I am to Juſt with the Heathenish Admirall, the greateſt enemy of Chriſtian people: now I am well aſſured, that a great number of the Sarazins will iſſue forth of the City, to bee eye-witneſſes of theſe Juſts to bee held without the walles of the City, Therefore

you

you ſhall give warning to all Chriſtians to keepe within the wals, arming themſelues in a readineſſe, and cloſely keepe it from the eares of the Pagans: ſo when the Pagans are come forth to behold theſe Iuſts, the Chriſtians ſuddenly ſhall ſurpriſe the Guards that keepe the Gates, and if any mutiny ariſe, let them keepe out thoſe that are out. Alſo ſend a Meſſenger to King Pepin of what is done, that hee with his army may come vpon them that are without, while thoſe within are ſet on by the armed Chriſtians, ſo begirting them on every ſide, that in the end we may make ſuch a ſlaughter on them, that the Chriſtians may receiue both their City in peace, and their former liberty. So having ended his ſpeech, the Prieſt departed. Then the Admirall commanded Valentine to bee led into his Chamber to dine, giuing them charge he ſhould be honourably attended at the boord. Being ſet among many Lords, he behaued himſelfe gently and mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admirall called vnto him a Nephew of his named Salatas, commanding him to ſee Valentiue as well armed at all points as himſelfe, and moreouer charged his Nephew to deliuer vnto Valentine the beſt horſe in his Stable. Salatas hauing receiued this command from his Vncle the Admirall, tooke Valentine and led him into a faire Hall; being come thither, hee cauſed to be layd before him diuers Armors, willing him to make choice of the beſt: Valentine caſt his eyes vpon them all, and at laſt appointed the Armor wherewith hee would be armed, and making himſelfe ready as faſt as he could, he approached downe into the vtter Court, whereas he was attended with his Horſe ready to put his foot in the ſtirrop. Being come downe out of the Hall, he preſently mounted his horſe, the Admirall likewiſe ready Armed out of his priuate Pallace. Beeing thus Armed, they tooke their way toward the chiefe gate of the City of ROME, for on that ſide King Pepin had layd his ſiege.

When they were both in the field, Valentine hung his ſhield about his neck, in which he bare a hart wauy in a field of ſilver, and on one ſide of that Hart a Tree, all which did ſignifie that hee was found in a Forreſt, and were the ſame Armes KING

Pepin beſtowed on him. The Champions beeing entred the Liſts, great was the clamor of the French in joy of Valentine, the ſound whereof the Pagans hearing, ſuddenly pſued forth of the City to behold theſe Tryumphant Juſts. The Friar having plaid his part among the Chriſtians within the City, preſently after the Pagans were gone out to behold theſe triumphs, addreſt himſelfe to take poſſeſſion of the gates, which having gotten, there was no entrance againe to be expected. King Pepin being made acquainted with their purpoſe, prepared all his men of war ready to relieve Valentine, if neceſſity required. Having now all things in readineſſe, the houre was at hand that the Juſts ſhould beginne, So each of them being prepared for the encounter, they va-

liantly couched their Speares, and the firſt courſe proved ſo valiant, that their Speares ſhivered all in ſplinters: each

Comba-

Combatant perceiving baloꝛ to vaniſh on the top of his Helme, made out a ſecond courſe, where Valentine got the better, foꝛ with his Speare (charged againſt the vꝛeaſt of the Admirall) hee gave him ſuch a ſtrong blow, that he foꝛced his Speare quite thoꝛow his Body, inſomuch as he fell from his Hoꝛſe ſtarke dead, making a pittifull noyſe at his departure, wherefoꝛe the Pagans ran ſuddenly vpon Valentine and would have killed him. Valentine perceiving their intent, with a reſolute courage put ſpurs to his Hoꝛſe, and with his Swoꝛd dꝛawne, violently ruſhed thꝛough the thickeſt of the Pagans, and ſlew many of them as he paſſed thꝛough them. King Pepin alſo with his hoaſt came vp to the ayd of Valentine, but he was ſo hard beſet, by the Pagans, that he was ſmitten from off his Hoꝛſe, which Valnntine eſpying came vp to the reſcue of the King, ſo that he hoꝛſed him againe.

The King perceiving himſelfe delivered out of danger, called vnto Valentine, and ſaid. My Child, thou haſt ſaved my life, which if the Gods grant to ſpare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the battell grew ſo hot, that the Pagans were foꝛced to retire to the City: when they came to the gates, the Chꝛiſtians that were in the City iſſued on them, and placed the Enſignes and ſtandards of King Pepin on the wals. The Pagans ſeeing King Pepins colours diſplayed on the Wals, betook themſelues to flight, in chaſe of whom the Chꝛiſtians followed on ſo faſt, that they ſhamefully ended their dayes. In this battell were ſlaine 9. Pagans, onely by the meanes of Valentine, who bare himſelfe ſo baliantly that day, that he was the death of foure Hoꝛſes at the leaſt. And thus by his pꝛoweſſe, the City was againe reſtoꝛed to the Chꝛiſtians, foꝛ which deed, there was great triumph in all Chꝛiſtendome: but eſpecially at Rome, ſo that all the Inhabitants round about, gave everlaſting pꝛaiſe to Pepin King of France, and by the generall applauſe of ỹ people, he was ſacred Emperoꝛ and cꝛowned by the Pope. King Pepin did many goodly acts in his time, adminiſtring Juſtice to all. And this happened in the time of Pope Clement the Fourth.

CHAP. XII.

¶ How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the love the King ſhewed towards *Valentine*.

KIng Pepin having expelled the Pagans out of ROME, he tooke his way backe againe towards Orleance, and being there arrived, he was right ioyfully welcomed by Bertha his Queene, with her little Son CHARLEMAINE, and her faire Daughter Eglantine, and their ioy appeared ſo much the more, for that Valentine whom ſhe loved ſo dearely, was againe returned home in ſafety: Being ſome few dayes reſted from his weary labours the Lady ſends for Valentine, who accordingly came vnto her: and when ſhe ſaw him, ſhe ſaluted him kindly, and with an amorous countenance beganne thus vnto him: Valentine you aboue all the reſt, are moſt welcome, and well ought it ſo to be, for Fame hath blowne forth her Trumpe of your Triumphs, & reports ſaies you were the onely Champion that drave the Pagans out of Rome. Valentine replyed: Madam, I can hinder no man to ſpeake what pleaſeth him, but as for my ſelfe, I have done little deſerving praiſe, but it hath pleaſed the King your Father to do me great honour: even ſo much, as all the daies of my life I am not able to make the leaſt part of recompence. And as he ſpake theſe words, Haufray and Henry (two men compoſed all of envy) entred the Chamber of Eglantine, and ſeeing him, began thus to ſpeake. Valentine, what have you to doe heere in the Chamber of our Siſter? it is no place for ſuch ſtraglers as you are, this your boldnes is not to be borne: no man knowes of whence you are: therefore we adviſe you to bee warned that you attempt not the like againe, leaſt you dearely buy theſe your preſumptions. Valentine hearing theſe words, anſwered: Wrong me not, for I entred not the Chamber of your ſiſter to her diſhonour. What though I be poore, and not knowne of whence

whence I am, yet am I not ſo baſe, as to offer violence vnto one diſcended from the blood of Kings? And further I promiſe and vow, never to come neere her Chamber againe: and therewithall departed, leaving the Lady mourning all alone.

Valentine haſted to the pallace to wait vpon the King at dinner, where was in preſence Haufray and Henry and the Duke Millon Daugler, who likewiſe waited vpon the king during dinner time. Dinner being finiſhed, the King aroſe and called to Valentine, and in hearing of all his Nobles, he thus began to ſay: My Lords, here is Valentine that hath well deſerved at our hands, and that ſaved my life when I was in danger: therefore to the end you may take knowledge of his good ſeruice towards me, I freely give vnto him the Earledome of Clerimont of Avergne, and when I can beſtow more vpon him, he ſhall not be forgotten. Valentine gave him many thankes, ſaying, that he had heaped vpon him more Honours then he could any way deſerue. Haufray and Henry hearing theſe words, grew greatly male-content, and at laſt Henry began to talke with his Brother on this manner: This Found-fellow I perceive growes in great fabour with the king, and there muſt be ſome courſe taken to croſſe his deſignes, or elſe our overthrow will ſhortly follow vpon it. For (quoth he) you know well that the king hath no Sonnes but we two, and one little one (named Charlemain) which if our Father die, may by our furtherance quickly be ſet beſide the kingdome. Againe, it is greatly to be feared that this Valentine will ſupport and vphold him againſt vs, therefore Brother I think it good to frame ſome plot againſt him, to bring him in diſpleaſure with the king, and ſo farre to proſecute our revenge againſt him, that if it be poſſible, we will not onely worke his downe-fall, but life and all. This being effected, we may at our pleaſure goberne the Realm without contradiction. He having ended his ſpeech, Haufray replyed, let it be as thou haſt ſaid: and that we may entrap his life, this ſhall be our plot: Wee will both goe to the king, and tell him that this vpſtart, hath defloured our ſiſter, and that we tooke him in Bed with her, which when the king heareth, will ſurely put him to death. Being thus reſolved, they daily fed their imaginations with the death of Valentine, while

he (nothing miſtruſting) ſerved the king dayly in all duty, inſomuch as the kings love dayly encreaſed toward him, and above all other, moſt deſired his company.

Heere let vs leave off a little, and come to Orſon his brother, who all this while lived in the Forreſt, ſo much feared of all men, that none durſt approach nigh the Wood. Daily complaints came vnto the king from every ſide, and amongſt the reſt, it chanced on a day, that a poore man came vnto the king all wounded, ſaying thus vnto him. Sir, I am come before you to make a complaint againſt a Wildman in the Woods, for one day as I and my wife paſſed thorow the Forreſt carrying bread, and other victuals, the wild-man came vpon vs, tooke it all away, and eate it every bit, and more then that, hee violently tooke my Wife from me, and conſtrayned her to yeeld vnto his lawleſſe Luſt. The king hearing out the poore mans tale, was diſpoſed to make himſelfe merry with his ill-fortune: and thereupon asked the poore man this Queſtion: Whether grieved him moſt, either the taking away of his Victualls, or his Wife: by my fayth ſaid the poore man, at the wrong offered to my wife. Thou haſt rightly ſaid (quoth the king) therefore I command my Treaſurer to ſee reſtitution made vnto thee for the loſſe of thy victuals, but as for thy wife, thou muſt beare the burthen thereof thy ſelfe.

After this the king called all his Barons to aſſemble and take ſome order to take this Orſon, all which they did, and hereupon a proclamation was ſent into all parts of the Realme, that whoſoever he was that could take this Wild-man alive, or dead, ſhould have a Thouſand Markes for his reward. Heereupon aſſembled many worthy Knights to take this taske in hand: but the king being on a day in his Pallace, in the middeſt of all his nobles talking and debating who ſhould be appointed to this buſines, Haufray (enemy vnto Valentine) being there, ſayd thus vnto the king: Sir, heere is Valentine whome you have nouriſhed and aduanced to great dignities, and one that hath offered vnlawfull loue to our Siſter Eglantine: Hee were fitteſt to ſet forward to try his valor, and let him be imployed to fetch in this Wild-man that is ſuch a terror to the Inhabitants: and if by his valor he can vanquiſh him,

then

then let him have Eglantine in marriage, which is his deſired wiſh. The King hearing theſe words of his Sonne, ſayd, Away, for thy ſpeech ſavoreth of nothing but envy. What though he be poore, of low birth, and found in a Forreſt, yet I find him to me true and truſty, and of a Gentle carriage, and to mee ſeemeth to bee borne of a more nobler carriage, then thou art: Leave off theſe thy malicious and and bitter ſpeeches againſt him, for the behaviour that dwelleth in him, ſhewes that he is diſcended of ſome Nobler lineage, then as yet to vs appeareth. And I for my part (for the divers vertues that daily are ſeen in him,) am willing that he goe to my Daughter when ever he pleaſe, for I am well aſſured, that no diſhonour can be offred out of a branch of ſuch a generous ſpirit.

Haufray hearing the king make this Apology on the behalfe of Valentine, was ſore diſpleaſed in heart, but ſetting a good face upon the matter, diſſembled his countenance for that time, but it ſeemed Valentine well obſerued him and at laſt brake forth into theſe words: Haufray, without any cauſe given on my part, yee have ſpoken ill of mee, and your will it is that I ſhould undertake the fight and conqueſt of the Wild-man, onely to this end, that I might end my dayes, and ſo your revenge be fully accompliſhed upon me: well, be it ſo, heere before the King I take a ſolemne Oath: that I will take the enterprize upon me, and find out the Wild-man, and having found him I will fight with him, and either bring him in alive, or dead, or elſe leave my dead Carkaſſe (as a witneſſe) in the open field. But if I conquer and live, I will never more be ſeene in this Country, till I have found the Father that begot mee, as alſo, bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Wedlocke, and how I come to bee left an Infant in the wood.

The King underſtanding well what danger Valentine had plunged himſelfe into, grew exceeding angry againſt his two ſons, curſing them, for that they were the cauſe of this dangerous enterprize: for hee loved Valentine more than any, and at laſt, called unto Valentine and ſayd: My child, adviſe you well what you undertake, for with the wild-man to fight is deſperation it ſelfe, you cannot bee ignorant, how many valiant men and worthy Champions,

tions, have by him been overcome: and others likewise of valiant account that have forsaken this combat. Therefore I say, let not the evill words of a few malicious men drive you desperate in loosing your life. For my child it is farre better to endure all the bitter words of envy (which is accounted Vertue) then to hazard ones life against such a monster, and no man.

Valentine replyed, pardon me (my Liege) for I will never revoke my intended purpose: They call mee Found-hat, which grieveth my very soule, for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what place, but I rest determined, and so I take my leave, for to morrow morning I will set forward to my intended enterprise. Having taken his leave, marvel not though the faire Lady Eglantine made great lamentation for what was happened, but the next morning by breake of day, shee called one of her maydens and said: Go unto Valentine, and bid him come and speake with me before his departure, bid him feare no danger of life, for I would faine take my leave of him The damosel did as ỳ Lady cõmanded her, & when she came to Valentine she found him mounted on horse-backe, yet she did her message unto him. He understanding her errand, said unto her: Damosell I know the love to be great between my Lady Eglantine and me, yet I would not wish her to desire that which would turne to her dishonour, But envy is of so great power, that it never leaves them whom it once possesseth. For certaine it is, that Haufray and Henry (Brethren unto your Ladie) have at me great and malicious harts, and will pursue me even to death (if it be possible) wherefore faire Damosell beare her this answere which you have heard me tell, and bid her thinke no evill thereof, and further that shee would me in excuse, that I refuse to come, and so farewell.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

How *Valentine* conquered his Brother *Orſon* in the Forreſt of *Orleance*.

NOW is Valentine vpon his Journey to the Forreſt, accompanied onely with his Page, whither being come, hee put his Helmet on his head, and ſent him backe againe. So he rode forth all that day, ſeeking the Wild-man but he could not find him, ſo the night drawing on, he deſcended from his horſe, and tyed him vp vnto a Tree: having ſo done, hee refreſhed his Body with ſuch victuals as hee had brought with him: when hee had eaten, and the day ſhut in, Valentine for feare betooke him to the top of a Tree, and there abode all that night. In the morning ſo ſoone as day appeared, hee looked round about, and at laſt eſpyed his Brother Orſon running through the Forreſt: at length when he came to the place where Valentine had tyed his horſe, the Wild-man ſtill drawing nearer vnto him, wondring at the beauty of the Horſe, began to claw him with his long nayles thinking to rouze vp the courage of the horſe, for hee had never ſeen the like. The horſe feeling the Wild-mans nailes ſcratching his ſide, began to fling and kicke exceedingly. Valentine ſitting in the top of a Tree, noted the terrible ſhape of the Wild-man, and began to be affraid, but calling on the Gods, he requeſted their aid againſt this Monſter. Orſon all this while was ſtill buſied in beholding this Horſe, and ſtill offred him ſuch injury with his nayles, that the Horſe did nothing but kicke and bite him. When Orſon perceived the Horſe to be too hard for him, he caught ſuch faſt hold of the Horſe, that he thought to caſt him over and fight with him. Valentine perceiving his Horſe in danger to bee ſlaine he cried out aloud and ſayd: Wild man, leave my Horſe and ſtay but till I come downe, and with me thou ſhalt have fighting enough. The wild-man hearing a ſtrange voice, looked vp into the Tree, and eſpying there a man, made vnto him divers ſignes with his hands and head to come downe, and hee would

would pull him in peeces. Valentine made all the haſt hee could, drew his Sword, and leapt vpon the ground cloſe by the wild-man. when Orſon ſaw the Sword and that hee offred to ſmite him therwith, hee leaped backe and kept him from the ſtroke, but ſuddenly returned againe vpon Valentine, and threw him vnto the ground. Heere-withall Valentine was very much diſcomfited, for he looked for no other then preſent death in that place, for he felt the ſtrength of the wild-man ſo great, that he had no hope of eſcaping.

Being thus both groveling on the ground, Valentine aſſated divers times to have gotten Orſon vnder him, but could not: when he ſaw that by ſtrength ther was no hope to overcome him, he drew out a ſharpe pointed knife, and ſmote Orſon deepe, into one of his ſides, that the bloud yſſued out abundantly. Orſon feeling himſelfe wounded, all inraged, he gave ſuch a ſcreech that the Woods echoed againe at the ſound therof, but yet recovering himſelfe, hee ſo fiercely aſſaulted Valentine with his ſharp nayles, that he got him at ſuch an advantage that he threw him once more vpon the earth, where lying, they fought ſo long together, that it were too tedious heere to vtter. At laſt, Orſon tooke the ſhield from about the neck of Valentine, and having gotten it he beheld it right ſtrangely, in regard of the divers colours thereon emblazed: when he had looked his fill, he caſt it againſt the ground, and ſuddenly returning againe to Valentine, with the violence of his nayles and teeth, hee brake in peeces both the ribs of his Armor, and his Habergion alſo, ſmiting and beating him ſo sharpely with his nayles, that hee made the bloud follow in all places whereon he laid hold. Valentine feeling himſelfe ſore wounded after ſome Oriſons vſed to the Gods, he made againe vpon Orſon with his Sword, thinking to have ſmitten him, but Orſon reculing backe, ſtept vnto a tree hard by, the which Tree he pulled vp by the roots, and made therof a club, being thus prepared, he made againſt Valentine, and ſtriking at him, gave him ſuch a blow, that he made him fall vpon one knee. Valentine recovering againe, laid about him fiercely, ſo there began againe another dangerous fight between the two Brethren, not knowing they were ſo, nor the cauſe of this their Fortunes. Orſon was ſo cruell and ſtrong, that he would oftentimes have killed

led Vnlentine, had it not been for his ſword, for he was ſore afraid thereof, by reaſon he had receiued a wound before by a knife. Long time they fought together, inſomuch as they both grew faint. In which tyrednesſe both ſtanding gaping on each other: Valentine looked wiſtly vpon Orſon, and ſaid thus, Wild-man, wherefore doſt not thou yeeld thy ſelfe to me? Heere thou liueſt like a Beaſt, hauing no knowledge of humane ſociety. Come thy way with me, and I ſhall make thee know both thy ſelfe and others. I will giue vnto thee food of all ſorts, and alſo cloath thee in apparrell fitting humaine ſhape.

Orſon vnderſtanding by ſignes that he would his good fell down vpon his knees, and ſtretched forth his hands towards his Brother, making vnto him a ſigne to forgiue him, and he would commit himſelfe vnder his command euer after, and with further ſignes promiſed, that during his life he would aſſiſt him both in body and goods. This happening thus, it was great ioy to Valentine, in that hee had conquered the Wilde-man, which ſo many Knights durſt not meddle withall, for by this onely he had woone himſelfe more honour then any Knight that liued in France in thoſe dayes. All this hand-aduen-ture now knitting vp in this manner, he tooke Orſon by the hand, and ſhewed him by ſignes, that hee ſhould goe on before him till they were out of the wood, for he would not truſt him behinde: and being out of the Wood, Valentine tooke off one of his Girdes, and bound both his hands faſt vnto his body, that he ſhould not attempt againe to do him any hurt: and in this manner being bound, he mounted on Horſe-backe, and led the Wild-man with him like a Beaſt, who neuer reſiſted, which was a thing moſt of all to be wondred at.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIIII.

How *Valentine* having conquered *Orſon* the Wilde-man, departed from the Forreſt towards *Orleance*, whereas King *Pepin* was reſident.

VAlentine having conquered the wild-man (as ye have heard) tooke his way towards Orleance, but you muſt imagine he could not reach thither in one day, wherefore the day being farſpent, hee determined to lodge at the nert Towne or Village: Being come thither, he thought there to take reſt for that night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the wild-man to come along with Valentine, every man ran into his Houſe, ſhutting vp their doores, and for very feare durſt not offer once to looke out on him. Valentine perceiving them full of feare, cryed out vnto them, ſaying: Open your doores every man and feare not, for we come onely for lodging, yet for all this they would not give him ſuccour: At laſt, ſeeing neither intreaty nor threatnings would prevaile, he ſware moſt bitterly, that if they would not receive him into theie Howſes to reſt there that night, he would let looſe the Wilde-man amongſt them. Still hee proceeded to intreat for lodging, but none would give it him. At laſt, as he had threatned ſo he did, and letting looſe the Wildman, he made him ſignes how hee ſhould run againſt ſuch a gate, which was an Inne, the which he did wringing a poſt from out the earth, he ran againſt the gate, ſmiting it open with ſuch violence, that they fell off the hookes vnto the ground. Valentine ſeeing the gate opened in this manner, entred the houſe, and the Wild-man with him: But when they within ſaw their Gate broken downe, they all forſooke the houſe, and ran out at the backe doze, leaving all to Valentine, and his beaſtly gueſt. Valentine perceiving them all fled, went to the Stable, and ſet vp his Horſe, and dreſſed him: and Orſon in the meane time went into the Kitchen, where there was Capons and divers other proviſion of fleſh vpon a ſpit roaſting at the Fire. Valentine made ſignes vnto Orſon that he ſhould turne the ſpit, but ſo ſoone as Orſon vnderſtood his meaning, he ſet his

hozny

horny talents vpon the meate and toze it from the ſpit, deuouring it as greedily as a rauenous Wolfe: when he had torne the meat in peeces, hee eſpyed a Caldron of water ſtanding by into which he put his head like a Horſe, and dranke water vnmeaſurably. Valentine perceiuing him to be a thirſt, made ſignes vnto him that he ſhould forſake the water, and he would giue him Wine: and therwithall tooke a pot and led him into the Seller: when Valentine had drawne the pot full of Wine, he gaue it vnto Orſon, who ſet it vnto his mouth, and taſting the liquor found it to be very good, drinking ſo freely thereof that he dranke out all the Wine, and afterward threw the pot againſt the ground, making a ſigne vnto Valentine to draw him more. Valentine fulfilled his ſignes, and filled him the pot againe, but Orſon eſpying before his ſight a little bowle or diſh, he put the Wine into it, & carried it into the Stable to Valentines Horſe: But Valentine perceiuing that, made ſignes vnto him, that his Horſe dranke nothing but Water, yet Orſon ſhewed againe in ſignes, that Wine was a great deale better then Water. Many other accidents happened while they were in the houſe, which heere we will paſſe ouer, for the night was ſo farre ſpent that reſt was fitter for them, then meat. Valentine baſked him to Supper making Orſon to beare him company (after his kinde) but *Orſon* dranke ſo freely of the wine that Valentine gaue him that he became drunke, and in the end got him to the fire, and fell faſt aſleepe. Valentine ſeeing what had happened, ſaid; Now doe I perceiue that there is neither any ſtrength nor reſiſtance in this Wild-man, for if I would I could here ſuddenly end his dayes. But in regard hee would make a further tryall of him, he punched againſt him with his foot ſo hard, that it awaked him: being awaked, hee made ſignes vnto him, that there was people about the houſe: with that *Orſon* ſuddenly aroſe as in a trance, and catching at a great log within the Chimney, he ranne againſt the Gate of the houſe, that he made all ſhake againe: at which ſodaine action, Valentine fell into a great laughter, which *Orſon* perceiuing, ſet all alone and betooke himſelfe to his reſt againe. Valentine made vnto him another ſigne, that he ſhould feare nothing for he would bee his watch-man, but *Orſon* would not ſleep againe, but with the log

in

in his arme. And *Valentine* did as before hee had promiſed vnto *Orſon*, and watched all that night fearing the Inhabitants, leaſt that they ſhould grow into an vproare for they were ſo greatly poſſeſſed with feare, that they forſooke their houſes and ranne every one into the Church, and all that night ſo tumbled the Bels backward, that ere the morning came, all the Village was filled with men of Warre.

Now the Morning beeing come, *Valentine* betooke him to his Horſe, leading *Orſon* bound (as hee had done the day before) towards *Orleance*, and the next day came to the City.

The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the wild-man, ran every man into his houſe, ſhutting their doores and getting vp into their higher roomes, gazing out at their Windowes. Being entred the City, tydings came to King Pepin, that *Valentine* had conque-

red

red the Wild-man. The King hearing hereof was greatly aſto-nied, and at laſt ſayd; Valentine my child in a happy houre waſt thou borne, bleſſed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the wood, for now I ſee thou art fortunate and by thee are wee delivered of our long feares. Valentine rode through the City of Orleance, till he came at the pallace gate of the King; and when the Porters ſaw Orſon, they ſhut the gates upon them till Valentine with a loud voice ſaid unto them, feare not, but goe tell the King that I will ſhield him and all his Court from the fury of this Wild-man, for I have made him ſo tame, that he will not hurt any one. The Porters went and told the King what Valentine ſaid, who commanded they ſhould enter the Pallace. Then Valentine tooke Orſon by the hand and led him in-to the Court. When Berthe and the faire Eglantine heard that the Wild-man was come, they got them to their Chambers for feare. Valentine went up into the great Hall where K. Pepin ſate accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcomming him home; Amongſt the reſt ſtood Haufray and Henry, who alſo made great ſhow of love, but in heart wiſhed the wild-man had been his death, King Pepin and the reſt of the Lords gazed on the wild-man, inſomuch as the King ſayd he is made of a proper mold, faire of ſta-ture, and though now hee ſeeme rough, yet if hee were cloathed hee would become the ſhape of a right worthy knight. Then Va-lentine ſayd; my Liege it were requiſite he were baptized, If plea-ſeth mee well (ſayd the King) let it bee done. So a Prieſt was appointed to baptiſe him: theſe were his Godfathers, K. Pepin the D. Myllon, Valentine, and the Dutcheſſe of Bourbon; So they called his name Orſon. The Baptiſme being ſolemnized, the king ſate him downe to Dinner, and Valentine waited on his Cup. Then Orſon was commanded into the Hall, to ſee his behaviour: and being come, the king beheld him earneſtly. Orſon ſeeing the meate, tooke as much as hee could graſpe in his hand, and devou-red it. Having eaten that, hee eſpyed one of the attendants that brought a Peacocke to the Table, who comming neare unto him, ſnatched away the Peacocke, and ſat him down and devoured it moſt greedily. Valentine ſeeing his behaviour, made ſignes unto

him that he did not well, wherat Orſon ſeemed aſhamed; but the king bad let him alone, for hee much delighted in his rudeneſſe. Orſon having deboured much meat, got a pot of Wine and drunke it off, throwing the pot to the ground. Night being come, Valentine was appointed to a faire Chamber, & a bed for Orſon in the ſame; but ſo ſoone as euer he entred the Coumber, he laid him on the ground and ſo fell aſleepe.

CHAP. XV.

How *Hanfray* and *Henry* tooke Counſell together to murther *Valentine* in the Chamber of *Eglantine*.

RIght glad and joyfull was the faire Lady Eglantine, that Valentine had conquered ſo wild a man, inſomuch that ſhe ſent him word to bring the Wilde man into her preſence. Then Valentine tooke Orſon by the hand, & led him to the Chamber of Eglantine, where was aſſembled diuers Ladies of honor to behold him. Orſon being in the Chamber, in a laughing humour leapt vpon the bed, there making diuers ſignes vnto the Ladies, which highly pleaſed them, but his meaning they could not vnderſtand, at which they were right ſorry. At laſt Valentine opened vnto them his meaning, which was, that he would gladly haue a play with ſome of them, wherat they looked one vpon another, and began to laugh. Whilſt this aſſembly of the Ladies chaunced in the Chamber of Eglantine, Hanfray came to Henry & ſaid thus vnto him; brother you ſee how the honour & credit of this foundling encreaſeth, which much eclipſeth our honor, and we muſt ſeeke ſome remedy for it. It is true (ſaid Henry) wherefore let vs lay ſome plot to put him off. Then ſaid Henry, hearken to what I ſhall ſay, Valentine is now with our Siſter, and we may haue fit occaſion to kill him in her Chamber, when we haue done we will informe the K. that we tooke him in her bed. According to their determination, they put it in action, and ruſhed into the Chamber of faire Eglantine. Aſſoone as Hanfray was entred he roughly thus began with Valentine; Diſloyall man now ſhalt thou knowe the

price of thy incontinency, purchaſing daily great diſhonour vnto the king our Father, by abuſing our ſiſter Eglantine and leading her affection to worke your pleaſure on her, inſomuch as by thee ſhe is made vnfortunate. But ſith the k. hath been told heerof, and he regardeth not our complaint, it is therefore high time to take vengeance on thee in our owne perſons: and Haufray lift vp his fiſt, and calling him Traitor, ſmote *Valentine* on the face, ſo that the blood ran out at his mouth: Henry on the other ſide came to him, & with a Glaive thought to have ſmitten *Valentine* vnto the earth. *Orſon* perceiving they were in earneſt, leapt out and gave Haufray ſuch a ſtroke with his rough hand, that he felled him, and after ran to Henry and girded him ſo betweene his armes, that if the Ladies had not been in preſence to have appeaſed the hurly burly, the wild-man had deſtroyed them both at once.

At this began an out-cry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barons in the Court, to know the cauſe of this ſudden clamor, but when they vnderſtood that *Orſon* dealt ſo violently with the kings Sons, they would have killed him with their ſwords. Valentine perceiving their fury to ariſe, drew his ſword, and ſwore that if any of them offered violence to *Orſon*, he would run him thorow. This ſaid, he made a ſigne vnto *Orſon* to be ſtill, and ſo he reſted himſelfe for that time. Haufray and Henry went to their Father, making vnto him a great complaint againſt Valentine and the Wild-man, ſaying; Father in an evill houre was this Valentine borne, for hee hath brought hither the wild-man onely to worke our overthrow, and if you put him not to death, he will thortly doe the like againſt your Royall perſon. The k. hearing this complaint was exceeding ſorry, and gave them this anſwere, that as for *Orſon* he would have him put into a ſtrong Tower, where he ſhould be ſafely kept, & not come abroad without leave given him; and as for *Valentine*, the king ſent for him to demand the cauſe of this diſorder. Valentine being come before the king, began to ſay on this manner, Dread Soveraigne, I was in the Chamber of your Daughter Eglantine, accompanied with divers other Ladies, that deſired to ſee Orſon: I know not how, nor why your two ſons Haufray and Henry violently entred the Chamber, charging me that I had ab-

ſed the body of your faire daughter. Moreouer in the heate of their violence vſed againſt me, Hauſray ſmote me on the face, that the blood yſſued, and Henry lifting vp his ſword thought to haue taken away my life. All which, when Orſon ſaw, he ſuddenly made toward them, and ſmote them both to the earth, and therewithall began this ſpeare. The King hearing this tale, ſaid; and is this true that you haue ſayd? Vpon my life (ſayd Valentine) all that I haue ſpoken is true. Then ſaid the King, *Orſon* hath done nothing but right, and that which in duty he ought to doe. And as for you Hauſray and Henry, I ſee right well that you are euen ſwolen full of malice againſt Valentine: wherefore I charge you from henceforth, that you attempt no ill againſt him, for heere I vow that I would not looſe him for the beſt Baron in my land, for I haue made many tryalls of his loue and faithfulneſſe towards me, and with this anſwere *Hauſray* and *Henry* departed, although forrowfull in heart that they could not worke their wils vpon him.

They being gone, Valentine ſtayed ſtill in the Kings Hall amongſt the other Nobles that were there aſſembled, and *Orſon* went here and there round about the Pallace, at laſt, hee came vnto the kitchen where the Cooks were making ready ſupper, and being there, he eſpied Two Capons ready for the Fire, *Orſon* made towards the Capons, and ſet vpon them, eating them vp raw like a hungry Dog. The Cook ſeeing him eate vp his Capons, tooke a Peſtell lying by him, and gaue *Orſon* ſuch a blow that he made him bow therewith. *Orſon* feeling the blow, ſtooped downe, and tooke the Cooke vp betweene the legs throwing him down vpon the ground, and being down he ſo belaboured the poore Cooke, that he had well nigh beate him to death. Tydings was brought vnto the king that *Orſon* had ſlaine the Cooke, and none durſt come neare him.

The King hearing hereof, willed him to be brought before him, and made ſignes vnto him, that he ſhould be hanged; but *Orſon* fetched the Peſtell & made ſignes how the Cooke had beaten him therwith. Wherfore the K. commanded that none ſhould offer him any injury. So after that, *Valentine* taught him manners how he ſhould behaue himſelfe. And ſo they both lived quietly in the Court of king Pepin.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

How Duke *Savary* ſent vnto King *Pepin* for ayd againſt the Greene knight, who would have his Daughter in Mariage againſt his will.

IT chanced, that not long after the comming home of Valentine and Orſon into the Court of King Pepin, that D. Savary ſent certaine meſſengers to King Pepin, which ſaid to him on this manner: Great King, our good Duke hath ſent vs vnto you, to requeſt your aid againſt a falſe and accurſed Pagan (called the Greene Knight) who hath beſiedged his Confines and intendeth to have his Daughter by force of armes againſt his will. Notwithſtanding all the reſiſtance that hee and his Three Sons can make againſt him. The King having heard their Meſſage, made this anſwer, wee agree to give them all the ayd wee can. He had no ſooner given anſwere vnto theſe Meſſengers, but there was come vnto the Court another meſſenger from Lyons, who after his duty done vnto the King, ſaid thus vnto him, Renowned King, aſſemble your men of Warre in readineſſe, and conduct them towards Lyons, for the *Almaynes* are comming againſt you in great numbers, their whole forces conſiſting of a bove a Hundred Thouſand fighting men. The K. hearing this ſodaine newes was much troubled in mind: and preſently called before him the Archbiſhop of Rhemes, the Duke Myllon Daugler, *Gervais* and Sampſon. Theſe with others of his Nobles being aſſembled, he declared what the Meſſenger had ſayd, and withall craved their Counſell what was beſt to bee done, whether to goe to *Aquitaine* to ſuccour Duke Savary, or to Lyons, to reſiſt the *Almaines*: whereunto Myllon Daugler made this anſwer. The Duke I confeſſe deſerueth to be ſuccoured, but yet in Two extreames, let vs chooſe the leſſe: Therefore, I iudge it moſt meete firſt to defend your owne Land that is now in preſent danger: and for the Duke he muſt be content to take our preſent affaires for anſwere: ſo generally it was concluded to goe for Lyons.

With theſe wordes the Meſſenger that came from the Duke of Savary departed, and carried theſe Tidings with him to Aquitain, which made him very ſorrowfull to heare it, becauſe the Greene Knight had very ſtrongly aſſayled him. Now heere gentle Reader, I let you underſtand for the better ordering of proceeding, that this Greene Knight heere ſpoken of, was Brother vnto Ferragus the Gyant that kept the Lady Bellyſant in his Caſtle, who was the diſtreſſed Mother of the Two Infants borne in the Wood, called Valentine and Orſon, as is before declared. Duke Savary perceiving no hope of aid from King Pepin made open proclamation throughout al his Dominions, that al of what Condition ſoeuer, ſhould be ready armed againſt the morrow after, for hee would then goe out vpon the Greene knight and fight with him in the field, all which was accordingly performed. The day appointed being come, both Armes met, aſwell Horſe as foot. The Pagans preſented themſelues in multitudes, and the Greene Knight behaued himſelfe ſo valiantly, that at firſt encounter with his Battell Axe, at two blowes hee ſlew two valiant Knights. Duke Savary perceiving him to be ſo warlike a generall, came vp to encounter him, and meeting, they aſſayled each other, But the duke was ill aduiſed to aduenture his body againſt the green knight becauſe it was euer predominately reported of him, that he ſhould never be ouercome of any, except he were a Kings Son, and ſuch a one as had never ſucked the breaſts of any Woman. But the Greene Knight was heerein deceiued, for hee thought it impoſſible any ſuch man ſhould bee vpon the face of the earth: but it fell out contrary to his expectation as ye ſhall after vnderſtand. Let vs now returne to the two valiant leaders who fought long & fiercely, but the Duke ventured ſo far into the enemies hands, that when hee had thought to have retyred, he could not, for he was round begirt with ſuch multitudes of Pagans, that hee was taken priſoner and brought backe vnto the Greene Knight, whoſe Ranſome could not be granted for any Gould or Treaſure. His men at Armes perceiving the Duke ſurprized, returned to Aquitaine, ſore lamenting the loſſe of their good Duke. And his three Sons Garin the elder, Anſelme and Garin the younger, made great moane to ſee

the

the hard hap of their Father, led captive among the Pagans.

The Ladies having shewed their sorrowes, in comes Fezon his Daughter with this lamentable out-cry, alas in an evill houre was I borne, seeing that so many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered death in my quarrell, and yet there is one thing more troubleth my distempered soule then all the rest, which is this: that my Father should be held captive in the hands of his enemies, the onely way to bring his aged yeares with sorrow to the grave. Alas (deare Father) your love to me is the only cause of all these distastrous chances. Thus fell Fezon into a dangerous fit of discontent, insomuch as with this extreamity of sorrow, shee had wellnigh finished her daies, had not the rest of the Ladies attendant laboured to comfort her in this great sorrow wherewith she was almost overcome.

Whilest the Lady was thus oppressed with sorrow, the Green knight triumphed over the worthy Duke, causing him to be brought before him into his Pavillion, and having him there, began to revile him on this disdainefull manner: Duke, now thou perceivest that thou art my vassall, and that I have power over thy life, this that I speake thou canst not deny: therefore let me tell thee what thou shalt expect from my sacred lips: either give me thy Daughter Fezon to Wife, and so redeeme my life, or else I will have her against thy will, leading her amongst rough Mountaines, and there royally Crowne her Queene of all those craggy Mansions.

The Duke hearing these proud meances, began thus to reply: Proud and insolent Sarazen, know this, that I will never give consent that thou have my Daughter, except thou also subscribe to be baptized. The Green knight hearing him say so, replyed: Urge me no further, for I am wholly bound to Mahomet, wherefore once againe I tell thee except thou yeeld to my demand, I will first make thee finish thy dayes miserably, and afterward consume all Aquitaine to ashes, and after that put to the Sword all that come in my way, Men, Women, and Children. The Duke hearing this Pagan thus resolute, began againe on this manner: Pagan, the Gods protect mee from thy cruelty, for I had rather rely on their power, then thine. The Greene Knight hearing him say so,

began wistly to set his eye vpon him, and marking his vnwonted lamentations began afresh with him on this manner: Graue Duke, leaue off these thy sad laments, and harken vnto my relation and resolution also, and this it is: I am not ashamed to let thee vnderstand that thy Daughters beauty hath enthralled mee, and therefore I will recall my threatned sentence of death against thee: Out of which captiuated affections toward thy daughter, I am forced to yeeld to this condition, that thou shalt find out a knight within the space of 6. Months, to encounter me: and if so it happen that by strength of Armes he conquer me, I vow by all the Heauens, to send thee backe againe into thy owne Country, without making any of the same. But if it happen that I proue Conqueror ouer that Knight, then shalt thou willingly resigne thy faire daughter into my hands, to bee my lawfull Wife. These Articles being produced, the Duke willingly agreed thereunto, so the Truce was accordingly proclaimed.

These agreements thus concluded, the Greene knight gaue leaue that Duke Savary should depart vpon conditions, that hee should sweare to keepe couenants not onely for the present, but during life. The Duke being thus deliuered, made his repaire to Aquitaine, whither being come, he caused open Proclamation to be made of those conditions whereunto he had before subscribed concerning his sayd Daughter: and withall the truce taken for the space of fiue Months. His Counsellors hearing what was past, aduised him to dispatch Messengers into all Lands, with these aduertisements following: If there were any knight whatsoeuer, that durst encounter the Greene knight for the loue of the beauteous Lady Fezon, hee should lay downe his gage, and so bee answered. These Letters were sent into Twelue Christian Lands: what followed, you shall better learne in the succeeding Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

¶ How divers Knights arrived at *Aquitaine*, at a ſolemne Iuſtes there houlden to beare away the love of the beauteous Lady *Fezon*.

DUring this time of truce, betweene the Duke Savary, and the Greene knight, Pepin King of France, had taken his Journey againſt his enemies at Lyons, accompanied with a mightie hoaſt of men: beeing come before the City with all his forces, he ſet upon a King called Lampatris who had alſo brought into the field, 40000. fighting men. This Lampatris was King of Seynes, Holland, and Friezland, with the Country of Monemarch, in the which ſtood a very ſtrong defenced City whereunto they with drew themſelues: King Pepin getting knowledge hereof, ſtrongly begirt this City with a ſiege, inſomuch that at laſt they were conſtrained to yeeld, or ſuffer famiſhment, but reſoluing upon the ſafety of their lives, they yeelded their City, which City the King beſtowed upon Guy Marſhall of France. Theſe wars being ended, Pepin returned againe into France with all his warlike Souldiers: being arrived at Paris, it was told him that Duke Savary had taken truce with the Greene knight, and the manner how, whereat the King laughing heartily ſayd in the preſence of his Barons, who is hee amongſt you that would win faire Fezon for his Love, muſt take upon him a Combat againſt the Greene knight, whom if he conquer and overcome, the D. will not onely give him his Daughter, but one halfe of all his poſſeſſions: and that this is true, behold Letters here written with his owne hand. Every of theſe worthy knights right diligently viewed theſe Letters, yet none of them durſt under take the enterpriſe, ſaue onely Valentine who perceiving them all refuſe it, ſayd thus vnto the King: Right deare Soueraigne

veraigne; if it pleaſe you to giue me leaue, I will aduenture my ſtrength vpon that Greene knight and will gladly vndertake the taske committed. Againe, I haue a great deſire to leaue France, for I long to take in hand ſome tedious iourney, to find out the Mother that bare mee, and from whence I am deſcended. Valentine (ſayd the King) take thou no care of whence thou art, for it reſteth in my power to make thee greater then any man within my court, and for that I find thee willing to goe to Aquitaine, I freely giue thee leaue, but on this condition, that after thou haſt tryed thy Manhood with the Greene knight, thou returne againe if thou eſcape with life. Valentine yeelded vnto the king in his demand, and ſo taking leaue, hee ſhortly after prepared to his Iourney.

When Eglantine heard that Valentine would go into Aquitain, ſhee was very ſorrowfull, and at laſt in the middeſt of teares ſent for Valentine to come vnto her. Valentine promiſed the Meſſenger to bee with her anon, which accordingly he performed, and being come, ſhee braſt forth into teares, ſaying: Ah Valentine, now I doe well perceiue that all my ioyes are at an end, and that you are reſolued to leaue this Country of France. Ah, would to God it might be my good hap to goe with you, for there is not a man liuing, whom I hold ſo deare as you, and (were I not curbed by my high birth) I would make thee my Husband. And that thou mayeſt the better perceiue my true intent, take thou heere the keyes of all my Treaſure, and take what pleaſeth thee, for there is great ſtore, and the Gods giue thee ſuccour in all thy knightly enterprizes.

Lady (quoth he) Siluer and Gould need I none, but that which moſt of all diſtempereth my quiet Breaſt, is, that I cannot learne of my diſcent. Moreouer, one thing more troubleth mee as much as the other, which is this, I beare vpon one of my ſhoulders a croſſe and it is of the colour of moſt pure Gold, of which ſigne I know not what to gather, but reſolue thus neuer to reſt in any place, vntill ſuch time as I haue found out the truth of my Nativity, and ſo louely Lady I take my leaue, earneſtly requeſting you to ſtop the current of theſe Briniſh teares: and withall I vow, that, if I find my birth anſwerable to the Majeſtie

from

from whence you are deſcended, to take you as my onely choyce, to Wife, forſaking all other. On the other ſide, having found out my birth, and perceiving it not anſwerable to yours, I would not bee your Husband for all the wealth in the World. For malicious tongues in time to come will ſay, where is the Brethren, Sifters or Cozens of this runnagate, that hath preſumed to match himſelfe vnto the Daughter of our mighty King Pepin? having ſpoken all theſe words, he departed, leaving Eglantine full of griefe. But when ſhee had ſome little time ſat ſtill, ſhee could not be ſatisfied, but offered to follow him whither ſoever hee went, and in concluſion brought him on ſome part of his way, Being accompanied with divers of the Nobility. Valentine being departed Haufray and Henry were right glad thereof, privily conſpiring how to bring it to paſſe that Valentine with his Brother Orſon (who went along with him) might by Treacherous villany, come vnto an vntimely death.

CHAP. XVIII.

¶ How *Haufray* and *Henry*, accompanied with a Troope of their Confederates, lay in ambuſh to take away the life of *Valentine*.

VAlentine and Orſon having taken their leave of King Pepin, addreſſt themſelues for *Aquitaine*. Being on their way, Haufray and Henry conſulted together (ſoyning to their aid a Third, who was Cozen to them both) how they might lie in Ambuſh to ſet vpon Valentine and Orſon, to worke their deſtruction: which number was about 30. ſtrong able men. This plot being thus come to perfection, charge was given to theſe warlike men, that if they could not ouercome Valentine and his Brother Orſon to death, yet they ſhould lay hold on Valentine, and keep him

him ſafe. The place appointed wherein this ſhould be done, was a very large and great Foreſt through which Valentine muſt needs paſſe. Not long after the Ambuſh was pitched, it ſo chaunced that Valentine came riding along the Foreſt with Orſon running by his ſide, ſwifter then any Horſe, who comming neere the place where theſe Armed men lay, forth ſtept their Captaine (called Grygar) accompanied with all his Troopes with their weapons drawne, thinking to have ſurpriſed Valentine on the ſuddein, and to have put him to death: Now this fierce Traitor lent him ſuch a mortall blow, that his Sword paſſed quite thorow his Armour, and entred into his fleſh, inſomuch as the bloud followed the blow, and withall vttered forth theſe vnwelcome words: Valentine,

either yeeld thy ſelfe Captive, or receive thy death. Valentine, as a man all amazed was ſomewhat moved at the ſight of his owne

bloud,

bloud, and conſidering how he was encompaſſed with a multitude of his enemies recommended his innocency vnto the Gods, and at laſt ſpake on this manner: My Lords (ſpeaking to Hautray and *Henry*) I ſee well that you haue determined my dayes by Treaſon, and without any cauſe on my part giuen, but yet I aſſure you, that before I yeeld my ſelfe into your hands, or before this dayes Sun be Sett, I ſhall ſend ſome of you here preſent into ſuch a Country that you ſhall ſcarcely euer returne againe to bring tydings of your valor. And herewithall drew forth his Sword, and gaue the firſt that encountred him ſuch a blow vpon his head, that he claue it euen to his teeth, and there lay he dead. After that hee betooke him toward the reſt withſuch violence, that at euery ſtroke one fell before him.

Orſon perceiuing his Brother thus to lay about him, began to rouze himſelfe, and with his rough hands and piercing talents, he rent and tore all that came in his way, and ſo bit them with his teeth, that they fell groueling vnto the ground one vpon another, where he trampled ouer them like dirt, pinching them with his feet. Valentine ſeeing his Brother Orſon thus beſtir himſelfe, held vp his bloudy ſword, defending himſelfe, and offending his enemies ſo valiantly, that they all forſooke them, and durſt not ſtay within their ſight. *Grygar* their Captaine perceiuing all his men thus pittifully killed and ouercome, cried out with a loud voice on this manner. Valentine yet I wish thee yeeld, or elſe looke for nothing but death. Valentine hearing theſe his inſulting words, made toward *Grygar* & in fierce and furious manner aſſailed him; but being too forward he plunged himſelfe ſo into the throng, that he was enclosed round about, keeping off Orſon with their long ſpeares. Being thus begirt about with enemies, he ſtill behaued himſelfe ſo valiantly, that not any man durſt lay hold vpon him, til at laſt they gathered in ſo cloſe vpon him, that he was euen ouercome with multitudes, & being not able longer to wield his Sword, they took him bound him & carried him away w̄ ſtrong hand. *Orſon* perceiuing his brother thus poſted away, ran after, making a hideous noyſe, but he could not ouertake them, for they rid away ſwifter then he could run, & hauing at laſt loſt ỹ ſight of thē, knew not what way he

were

were yeſt to take after. Grigar the Captaine, commanded them to follow after Orſon, and to bring him backe, either alive or dead: but in vaine they followed, for he out-ran them, and ſo eſcaped.

Thoſe that had the charge of Valentine, brought him to a Caſtle ſtanding in the midſt of the Foreſt, kept by a notable Theefe, who was Coſen Germaine to Grygar. Valentine being entred the caſtle gate, they entreated him vilily, conveying him to a deepe Dungeon, which grieved him to the heart, inſomuch that his griefe braſt out into theſe words: Alas, now is that come upon mee, which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the hands of my deadlieſt enemies, and of thoſe that have ever ſought my life and bitter deſtruction. Farewell Noble king Pepin, for I feare I ſhall neber ſee thee more, and that which moſt of all vexeth me, that thou ſhalt never underſtand the truth of my death, for the very ſtench of this vgly Dungeon, doth even ſtop my breath. Farewell Orſon too for thou haſt already ſuffred death for my ſake. and more could no man do, euen as much as if thou hadſt been my naturall Brother. Farewell my ſweet Mother alſo, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might ſee and know her, but my hopes are all fruſtrated, for now muſt I die, without the knowledge of what Parentage I am diſcended. Thus Valentine lamented in the dark pit, whilſt his enemies determine what ſhall be done to him Some were of opinion to put him to death, others that he ſhould be committed to a perpetuall impriſonment. But Grygar being Lord over the reſt, would not yeeld hee ſhould be put to death, but rather to keepe him in priſon till Hauffray and Henry had received knowledge of all their proceedings. Having thus ſet down their reſolution, they determined to take their Journey towards Paris, where the king then lay, to meet with Hauffray and Henry who entertained them royally, being right glad that Valentine was fallen into their hands by Treaſon. Now underſtand, that Orſon all that night was come to reſt within the Wood, lying downe at the root of a Tree. The morning being come, he took on his way towards Paris alſo, never reſting till hee came into the preſence of king Pepin: being come thither, by ſignes and tokens he ſhewed the manner of the taking of Valentine: but yet for al the haſt he made,

Grygar

Grygar was arriued at the Court before him. *Haufray* and *Henry* were much grieued that *Orson* had escaped, but all their comfort was hee could not speake, thinking therby to escape from all mistrust, but their hopes were all laid in the dust, as hereafter will appeare.

The next day the two Bretheren had appoynted that Grygar should returne in all hast to the Castle to put *Valentine* to death: but see how it came about, that all their Counsels are quite overthrowne; for *Orson* (as before I sayd) came vnto the Kings Pallace that morning and growing towards Dinner time, the tables being all prepared, the king accompanied with sundry Nobles, Barons, and knights came in, and euery man tooke his place. The King being set, and casting his eyes abroad, suddenly espyed *Orson*, whom when he beheld, he thought by him that *Valentine* was not farre off, but it fell out contrary. *Orson* ran through the Hall, making a lamentable noyse, and knocking his breast in most hideous and fearefull manner, drave the King into ten Thousand feares, and all the rest who beheld this lamentable spectacle. *Orson* ran agayne along by the table, looking very fiercely on every man, and making many fearefull signes. Amongst the rest, at the last he lighted vpon the Traytor *Grygar*, who espying *Orson*, hung his head in his bosome. *Orson* having once gotten sight of him, ran furiously vpon him, and gave him such a sturdy stroke, that he smote off one of his eares. After he began to lay vppon his face, insomuch that he put out one of his eyes, and broke one of his teeth. *Grygar* being thus wounded, began to cry out for helpe, but *Orson* hearing him make such an vprore, ran againe vpon him and gave him such another stroke, that he felled him vnto the earth, ouerthrowing Tables, meat, and all that stood before him, which drave all the beholders into admiration, and had he not been rescued by a valyant Prince that then sate at Boord, he had never gone from that place alive, which Prince having rescued him, began to say vnto the King on this manner; Mighty King, consider into what danger this man is fallen by the fury of this Wild-man, and eyther let him die for this presumptuous fact, or no man will be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him say so, replyed, we will

will consider the cause, and as we find it, so will wee proceed against him. Bring him hither before us that we may question the cause of this his fact. Orlon was brought before the King, and he demanded how he durst presume so farre into the presence of his Majesty? Orlon presently answerd by signes, how that they had slain Valentine in the Forrest, and that he would be revenged for his death, on that inhumane Traytor Grygar, and withall closed his Fist, and put it to his mouth in great rage, in token of defiance. King Pepin perceibing by his action the course of the matter, called forth unto all his Lords and Barons on this manner: My Lords, you see as well as I, that this wilde man hath challenged Grygar to fight with him: therfore tell mee your opinions, what is best to be done in this case, for I cannot choose but marvell, why this Wild-man should find out Grygar above all the rest of the Knights heere assembled: therfore let every man freely speake, for I much doubt some hidden secret to lie herein, and for my part I could willingly give consent, that it should bee tried forth by combate betweene them. When the King had thus uttered what hee thought, the Barons agreed to the verdict that the K. had passed. So the battell was determined, and Grygar was brought before the King, to the intent he should undergoe the Challenge against the Wild-man. Grygar bearing what the K. had determined, was very fearfull and sad, and not without cause: for he foresaw hereby, that treason would come to light, and therewithall cast an ill-favoured eye on Haufray. Henry perceibing Grygar stand so amazed, said, Grygar feare not, for I promise thee howsoever it fall out, that no danger shall come unto thee from our Father the King, for we will worke thy peace assuredly, so thou wilt sweare never to reveale the fact, yea, (quoth Grygar,) I well perceive how the case will goe with mee, I must suffer a reproachfull death for your sake. Having thus sayd, he left Henry, and turned unto the King, saying mighty king, let me make one request unto your majesty, that you would dismisse me from this dangerous taske: the reason chiefly mooving me, is, that inasmuch that it is not man against man, wherby a knight may win honour, but a wild Image to encounter with man, and that man no knight, I thinke I may

safely

ſafely (ſo your grace be pleaſed) refuſe the combate. Nay (quoth the King) no excuſe in this caſe can be admitted, for the combate is granted not onely by my owne aduiſe, but alſo by the counſell of all my Barons, and the reaſon moouing vs to grant it, was, that treaſon long lying hid might come to light. *Grygar* hearing it thus concluded on, grew more into deſpaire, but *Hauſtray* being there preſent, comforted him again on this manner: Doubt not, for you haue equity on your part: and beſides, I will ſee you well armed in all points, fitting your knightly race.

When Orſon gathered by his wonted ſignes that hee ſhould fight with this Traitor, he was right glad, and withall made ſhewes vnto the King, that Valentine was dead, wherat the King grew wondrous ſad, and faine would *Orſon* haue been vpon the backe of *Grygar*, but that the King commanded him to be taken away, making ſignes vnto him that he ſhould ſtrike no more, till the time they ſhould meet for the tryall of the truth. Againe the King called vnto Grygar to make haſt to arme himſelfe. Grygar loth to venture his life vpon ſo vncertains ground, began once againe to ſpeak vnto the king, ſaying: Moſt dread Soueraigne, I haue been a long ſeruitor about your perſon, both in war and peace, but you reward me not accordingly, inſomuch, as you compell me to fight againſt a man that hath neither ſence, reaſon, nor in truth a humane ſhape. *Grygar* (ſaid the king) if the right be on your ſide you need not feare, for you ſhall enter into the field well armed, and as for Orſon he ſhall aduenture vpon thee altogether vnarmed. Againe, you ſhall be well mounted on Horſe-backe, he on foot, nor ſhall he beare any weapon. The right you ſay is on your ſide, wherefor maintaine that right, and helpe your valor, for the ſentence of combat may not be re-called.

CHAP. XIX.

How Orſon & Grygar fought together, and how Orſon returning victor, cauſed Grygar to confeſſe the treaſon, who was after hanged, and Valentine delivered from the Dungeon.

THe place of combate being appoynted, Orſon attended in a readineſſe for his enemy: in the end Grygar beind well armed by Haufray and Henry, took his leave of them on this wiſe; My Lords, in your cauſe am I delivered over to death, ſhill was the day wherein I began this enterpryze. Hold thy peace (ſayd Henry) for I will defend thee from the ſentence of my Father, and worke thy ſafety ſo thou wilt be ſecret. Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted on his horſe, went towardes the Pallace Gate, where this combate was to be effected. The houre being come, the King repayred to the Windowe to behold the combate; All the Nobles in the Court being aſſembled, the Iudges were appointed, that no wrong ſhould be offred on either part. So Grygar being entred the Liſts, he eſpyed Orſon, and began to draw neare vnto him ſaying: Villaine, thou haſt offered me great wrong in putting forth one of my eyes, but ere I part I will make thee acknowledge that wrong, & that thou haſt falſely accuſed me to the King. Orſon perceiuing wherunto his proud ſpeeches tended, ſhewed him his nayles, gnaſhing his teeth together at him: whereat Grygar ſuddenly couched his ſpeare within his reſt, and ran vpon him. Orſon eſpying the Speare bent againſt him, gaue backe, whereby Grygar was diſappointed of his marke, and ran his ſpeare faſt into the ground: Orſon taking this advantage, ſuddenly returned backe againe, ſeized the ſpeare into his own hands, and having hold thereof, gaue his enemy ſuch a ſtroke, therewith, that he aſtonied him. Grygar feeling the fury of his ſtroake, ſet ſpurs to his horſe, and ran like a mad man about the field, Orſon ran after him with a grinning countenance, making ſignes vnto

vnto the king, that he would ere long forze him yeeld vnto him. Grygar fearing the danger wherein hee was like to fall, ſecretly to himſelfe murmured out theſe wordes: Ah Haufray for thy cauſe and ſake am I thus delivered ouer to death. Long and tedious was the fight, but *Grygar* could neuer ſo much as wound the wild man.

At laſt, Orſon caſt away the ſpeare, and came cloſe to *Grygar*, in ſuch manner, that he caught his horſe faſt by the necke, making him ſo mad and furious, that he ouerthrew his rider to the earth, and with the fall thereof, he loſt his ſhield. Orſon eſpying the ſhield, tooke it vp, and put it vpon his owne backe: after, hee came vnto *Grygars* horſe and gate vpon him, riding round about the field, making many ill-fauoured ſignes and tokens, inſomuch, as all the beholders there preſent, ſtood as men diſmayed. Amongſt the reſt, the King himſelfe appeared very ſorrowfull, and at laſt began thus to ſpeake: My Lords, I know not what to thinke hereof, neither can I yet perceiue whereunto this fight will grow but it is my opinion, that there is Treaſon ſmothered, and not yet come to light. Orſon hauing now a great while ranged about the field on horſe-backe after his enemy, at laſt forſooke his horſe, and encountrd Grygar on foot, inſomuch that he lent him ſuch a blow, that he ſmot him to the earth, afterward he leaped vpon him, and diſarmed him of his weapons: then the nert blow he ſtroke, hee ſmote off one of his armes: nert, on the body he gaue him ſuch a woond that he cut him euen to the reines of the back. *Grygar* hauing receiued all theſe wounds, cryed out moſt piteouſly: inſomuch that euery one requeſted he might haue a prieſt to confeſſe him of his ſins The Guard that was appointed for the field, hearing theſe out cries, ſent out a worthy Knight to demaund what he would haue done, vnto whom Grygar ſayd: Sir bring me before the Kings Majeſty, and before him and the reſt of this aſſembly, and I ſhall reueale the Treaſons whereof I am guilty, from poynt to poynt effectually.

CHAP. XX.

How *Grygar* being vanquiſhed by *Orſon*, confeſſed his Treaſon to King *Pepin*, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* had been the only plotters thereof, againſt the worthy *Valentine*.

AT laſt Grygar was brought before the king, who asked pardon for his high offence, and in the preſence of all the beholders, told him, that the only actors in this Traiterous plot, was Haufray and Henry his ſons, and by their meanes hee had taken Valentine and put him in priſon, and there meaning (in ſecret manner) to haue put him to death. The king hauing heard out his Tale, and perceiuing the whole truth of this plot againſt Valentine, commaunded Grygar to bee hanged vpon the next tree he came vnto. The K. hauing thus giuen ſentence againſt *Grygar*, called for his Horſe, and being mounted, made all haſt poſſible vnto the Priſon wherein Valentine lay. *Orſon* perceiuing the king in perſon would vndertake ſuch a Iourney, addreſſed himſelfe to run along by the kings horſe, leading him the way and making many ſignes of ioy and gladnes all the way he went. The king marking well all the Wild-mans behauiour, often ſpake vnto his Lords on this manner. My Lords, it is wonderfull ſtrange that this Wild-man ſhould beare ſuch an ardent affection towards Valentine, and beſides it ſtrikes me into a thouſand imaginations. Now you muſt know, that the king had great cauſe euen to loue this Wild-man, for that hee was his naturall Nephew, though as yet not reuealed, neither was the time yet come to bring it to light, till that by Clerimond (ſiſter vnto the gyant Ferragus) it ſhould be made manifeſt: For, at that time Clerimond had a Caſtell and in it a Head of Braſſe, compoſed by nigromancy, which head told vnto Clerimond all that ſhould happen vnto her all her life; and alſo, all that euer ſhe had done in her forepaſſed time. Beſides, this ſame head was compoſed by ſuch wondrous Magicall Art, that it ſhould neuer leaue off ſpeaking, vntill the nobleſt Knight in the world ſhould enter the Caſtle, and then the head was vtterly to giue ouer, and neuer to ſpeak more.

This

This Magicall ſpell, fell out vpon Valentine, whome that faire Lady Clerimond ſhall take to Husband, and for whom hee ſhall endure a world of miſeries, as (God willing) in the ſucceeding Hiſtory you ſhall vnderſtand. So leave we this, and returne backe againe vnto King Pepin where before we left him. K. Pepin goeth on his iourney towards the Forreſt to ſave the life of Valentine, and Orſon being with him, brought him vnto the very Caſtell wherein he was clapt vp. Being come to the Gates thereof, the Porters knowing the king, barred the Gates, for ſo they were commanded by the reſidue within the Caſtle, vpon paine of life. The King perceiving he could not enter in peace, commanded his Attendants to enter by force, and ſo they did. Being gotten within the Caſtle they ſeyzed vpon all the ſeditious Traytors, and bound them faſt in chaines, having ſo done, they went into the Dungeon where Valentine lay bound, and brought him forth vnto the King. Valentine eſpying the King, fell vpon his knees, yeelding him thouſands of thankes, for that extraordinary kindneſſe ſhewed to him, in delibering him out of a hell of darknes and feare of death. The Barons alſo that attended the King, welcommed him with great ioy and gladnes, telling to him al that had happened, and how that Orſon had fought with the Traitor Grygar in his quarrell, and obercame him: Valentine hearing hereof imbraced Orſon. Afterterward, the King commanded that all the Traitors ſhould be led into the Wood, and there hanged; and after ſpake thus vnto Valentine; Valentine, ſeeing it is thy good hap to be thus miraculouſly delibered out of the hands of thine enemies, I would adviſe thee to abide with me: but he replied, Dread ſoueraigne, pardon me for I will neber returne againe, till I haue found out the Parents of whence I am diſcended: and ſo humbly take I leave of your Majeſty, and euer reſt (onely this excepted) at your command and ſervice. So heere leave we king Pepin, and onely looke vpon Valentine & Orſon, who are taking their way towards Aquitaine to fight with the Green knight, a man feared of al men: for I muſt cal you to remembrance of that which I told you before, that he ſhould neber be vanquiſhed by any, ſaue only by a kings ſon that never ſucked woman. Being come to Aquitain, the people

flocked from all parts, to behold the rough & vnmanly ſhape of Orſon: but Valentine ſeeing their lolly, made him a Jacke of ſteele to put vpon him; when Orſon had it on his backe, he was much offended thereat and would haue throwne it away, but that he much feared Valentine, and would do any thing that he commanded.

Orſon hauing his ſteele Jacke vpon his backe, looked much vpon himſelfe, and at laſt became proud thereof, and ſet his countenance according to his heart. Now, as they were riding on their way, Valentine eſpied a faire Squior, making much lamentation. Valentine beholding him well, ſayd thus vnto him: Friend what ayleth you to ſhed theſe teares? haue you ſuſtayned any wrong eyther by man or beaſt? Tell me what may be the cauſe, and I promiſe you the beſt of my power, to relieue your diſtreſſed caſe? Alas (ſaid the Squior) thereof I make no doubt, but know this, that the cauſe of my laments, is the loſſe of a moſt kind and gentle maſter, and a man of the greateſt valor in Chriſtendome. How, haue you loſt him quoth Valentine? Sir, as he was trauelling towards Aquitain, to fight with the Green knight, thinking therby to win the faireſt Lady in the world (called Fezon) which Lady it is not poſſible for any to haue, except firſt he ouercome in ſingle combate the Greene knight. Diuers valiant knights haue there miſcarried: and when he conquereth them he cauſeth them to bee hanged on a Tree: and the number that are already dead, are 32. yeelding no ſhew of mercy towards any. Is all this true (quoth Valentine) that thou haſt told me? Why then ſure he is ſome Deuill in mans ſhape, that doth ſuch ſtrange exploits: But towards Aquitaine am I iourning, to try my fortune againſt him, for I haue heard much of that Lady Fezon, Ha ſir, (quoth the ſquior) goe not thither, to looſe your life on ſuch a deuill-ſquior (ſayd Valentine) I wil go forward & mean to cope with that famous Green knight: but if I can eſcape him, I will firſt talke with the Lady Fezon, and take her aduertiſement.

Orſon gathering ſome vnderſtanding of their talke, made ſignes vnto Valentine that he might fight with the Green knight, & that hee would make loue vnto ỹ Lady Fezon, wherat Valentine laughed heartily. By this time, thinke them to be come neere the City

of

of *Aquitaine*, ſtanding vpon a Hill: and meeting with an old man, hee queſtioned with him what City that was before him. Marry (quoth he) it is Aquitaine. Now tell me (ſaid Valentine) where reſteth the Greene knight? Why Sir (ſayd hee) without the City, I thinke you are going to fight with him. I (quoth *Valentine*.) Ah ſir (ſaid the old man) vndertake not ſo foule a folly, for it is not poſſible to conquer him. Come hither my ſon, and ſtand thou on this little hill, and I ſhall ſhew thee aboue Forty famous Knights hanging on a Tree, whom hee hath ouercome. Alſo, there is now but Fifteene dayes to be accompliſhed, and then the Duke of *Aquitaine* muſt part from his faire Daughter Fezon, to his great griefe, and to the ouerthrow of the whole Dukedome. Father (qd Valentine) the Gods defend her. Hee had no ſooner ſpoke theſe words, but there came an other ancient man of Foureſcore yeares of age in the habite of a Pilgrim. This man was that Blandimain, ſquier to the diſtreſſed Bellyſant, and he it was that led his Lady Bellyſant into the Caſtell of Ferragus the Gyant, as before wee haue declared. *Valentine* eſpying him, demanded him of whence he was, and whence hee came? Sir (quoth the Pilgrim) from *Conſtantinople*, but I could not enter into the City, by reaſon of a pagan ſouldan had begirt it with a ſiege, neither could I come to deliuer the meſſage on which I was ſent, wherefore I thought it my ſafeſt courſe to returne. Pilgrim (quoth Valentine) what thinkeſt thou of the Green knight, is it not poſſible he ſhould be ouercome? No (ſaid the Pilgrim, and I aduiſe you not to follow the enterpriſe:) for if there were a whole Hundred of you, he would ſee the end of you all. Father whither goe you ſayd Valentine? Sir, I take my readieſt way to Paris, for I haue a meſſage to K. Pepin, from a ſiſter of his named Bellyſant that long time hath been baniſhed from Conſtantinople wrongfully, and now is the good Lady in the houſe of a Gyant, that keepeth, her & vſed her honorably, intending to know k. Pepins mind, whether he be conſenting to thoſe wrongs done vnto her, for well he knoweth ſhe is a vertuous Lady, and for her ſake offereth to put himſelfe in ſingle Combat with the Emperor of Greece, for that he hath ſo wrongfully baniſhed her. Palmer (quoth Valentine) I pray thee return backe againe with

me to Aquitaine, for thither am I going to fight with the Greene Knight: if the Gods give me victory againſt him, I will accompany thee into France, for I ſhall ſtill thee, only for the love I beare vnto King Pepin, vndertake I this fight, for he hath been the meanes of my preſeruation, and as a Father vnto mee. Therefore to him I dedicate all my labours, and reſt wholly at his command. Sir (quoth Blandimain) to this motion I wil neuer conſent, for my Lady hath put me in truſt to diſpatch her affaires, and I will diſcharge the part of a truſty ſeruant towards her, and ſo taking my leabe, I commend ye to the protection of the Gods: The Palmer being gone, Valentine looked long after him, and not without cauſe, but he wiſt not why, for this was the man that had borne a part of his Mothers eriles. Well, Valentine alſo tooke on his journey, and after ſome few daies, came neere to the City of Aquitaine. Valeniine beheld the City very earneſtly, and paſſing on bee eſpyed a pleaſant Fountaine, thither he went, and alighting from his Horſe, laid him downe vnder a Tree, to refreſh his tyred limmes, ſ Orſon was his keeper all the while he ſlept: Anon he awaked and prepared himſelfe to take Horſe againe, but ſuddenly there arriued at the ſame fountaine, a couragious Knight, proud and of ſo haughty a ſtomack, that he was ſtyled the Proud knight, and withall ſo fierce and reſolute, that he never all the dayes of his life asked Queſtion of any man, yet if he whom he met ſaluted him not, he preſently killed him. This proud Knight came to the Fountaine, and Valentine beholding him, ſayd neber a word, and Orſon alſo gazed fiercely vpon him. The proud knight was angred in his heart, and approached neere vnto Orſon, and gabe him ſuch a blow that the blood yſſued out at his mouth. Orſon feeling the blow ſmart, ſuddenly tooke him and threw him to the earth vnder him, and preſently eſpying a knife at the knights girdle, ſmote him therewith into the body ſo deep, that he was nothing but blood. The knight feeling himſelfe wounded, cryed out aloud, whereupon Valentine comming in, reſcued the knight out of Orſons hands, and ſaid: Faire knight, you haue offred great wrong to ſuite a poore Wilde-man on this rude manner, who can ſpeake neber a word: with that the proud knight began

thus

thus roughly to anſwere Valentine: Proud miſcreant, why then doſt not thou ſalute me? and therewith drew forth a Glaive, thinking to have ſmitten him. Valentine ſeeing the blow, drew forth his ſword, and ſtroke at the proud knight with ſuch violence, that hee ſtroke him in manner dead, and ſayd vnto him: Hereafter learne thou to ſalute men in more friendly manner. The Proud knight being dead, his men fled with all the haſt they could vnto the City of *Aquitaine*, bearing tydings of their Maſters death. Duke Savary hearing thereof, was greatly diſpleaſed, for he was his Cozen. Amongſt the reſt Valentine vnderſtood of the lamentation that was made for the death of the proud knight beſides the Fountain: whereupon he ſuddenly mounted on Horſe-backe, and entred the City, where he lodged in a Burgeſſes houſe of the ſame City, whereby it came to the eares of Duke Savary, that he had ſlaine his Cozen. The Duke commanded that Valentine and his Brother Orſon ſhould be brought before him: So being come into the preſence of the Duke, hee began in this manner, Friends (quoth hee) of whence are ye? What Prince do ye ſerve? And whether be yee Knights or no? Sir (ſaid Valentine) I am a knight, and owe my duty and ſervice to the famous K. Pepin of France. Then ſayd the Duke vnto him, you have ſlaine my Cozen: tis true (ſaid Valentine) and ſo I ſhould have done had it been my owne kinſman, for he was ſo high of ſtomacke, that he diſdayned to ſpeake to any man, and ſmote ſo furiouſly at my companion, that hee had neere hand killed him: which I perceiving, drew forth my Sword and ſlew him. Faire Duke, know this, I am a ſtranger in this City, and hither am I come to Combat with the Greene knight: as alſo, to behold that beauteous Lady Fezon, whom the whole World admires: Wherefore I think it a Law of equity for Strangers to paſſe vp and downe in ſafety, conſidering I have ſhewed you the cauſe of my comming. When the Duke heard Valentine ſay ſo, he ſayd vnto him: Knight, right well haſt thou anſwered me, and ſeeing my Coſen hath come by this more by Pride then courage, I am right ſorrowfull, and ſo I paſſe it over, and pardon the deed. But in that you vrge that your comming hither was onely to Combate the Greene Knight:

come

come you into my Pallace, and there you ſhall behold that beauty for which you thus farre aduentured. Moreouer that you may ſee you are not come alone, you ſhall behold 15. knights to accompany you, and now new arriued for the loue of the Lady Fezon and to try their valor againſt the ſayd Green knight their enemy. So, I ſay, to my Pallace, and ſalute my Daughter as my cuſtome is to ſtrangers, before they further aduenture their perſons in battell with the Greene knight, and hauing preſented your ſelues before her in ſigne of loue, you ſhall receiue from her a Ring of Gold.

Sir (quoth Valentine) I ſhall be ready to do all rights and cuſtomes belonging to this place, and beſides will obey you in all things whatſoeuer it ſhall pleaſe you to commaund me. This conference ended the, Duke went into the Caſtell, accompanied with Valentine and Orſon. Hauing entred the Hall where the knights were aſſembled Valentine beheld the Lady ſitting among them, and making his way vnto her with all duty and reuerence, at laſt he ſaluted her thus: Lady, you whoſe beauty and fame is bruted through the world, the Gods preſerue you from the Green knight, who I dare boldly auouch is not worthy to touch your ſuperexcellent lips. Moreouer deare Lady, may it pleaſe you to vnderſtand, that Pepin the mighty King of France hath ſent vs hither, to preſent vnto you the moſt valianteſt man that liueth on earth. Wherefore Lady behold him well, for he feareth no man, nor any weapon, albeit he cannot ſpeake: wherefore I aſſure you, that the Greene knight is not able to withſtand his mightie force, nor make any reſiſtance againſt him. Sir (quoth the Lady) I yeeld vnto the king of France thouſands of thankes, as alſo to you that haue taken ſuch paines to preſent ſuch an one before me: But ſay, wherefore is this worthy Champion no better cloathed, for mee thinkes he is of an excellent preſence, well formed, ſtraight and of a hardy countenance: and if he were waſhed and bathed in ſome excellent liquor, his fleſh would be both white & ſoft. Lady (quoth Valentine) he neuer ware garment til it was very lately, and then I cauſed this Jacket you ſee him weare, to be made fitting to his body: moreouer I aſſure you, that when he came firſt to Paris, hee came like a wild ſauage, & naked man, & his fleſh was ſo hard, that he neither

neither feared Wind, nor cold. While he was ſpeaking theſe words, Fezon beheld *Orſon* very wiſtly, for ſhe was in love with him in her heart: but yet Valentine began again thus to ſpeak vnto her. Lady, for my ſelfe, I muſt ſay ſomewhat alſo, therefore know this, that onely for the loue of you, haue I aduentured my ſelfe into this Clymate to ſee if fortune will ſo much fauour me, that I may beare you away from all commers, by force of Armes: and yet faire Lady one thing more haue I to vtter to you, which is, that I haue made an Oath vnto my ſelfe, that I will neuer returne againe into France, till I haue proued my fortune on the Green knight and with him do I intend to cope before I part hence, and either deliuer him ouer into your hands as conquered, or ſuffer death, as many moe before me haue led the way. Alas faire Knight, ſaid the Lady, put not your ſelfe in danger for my ſake, for me thinks it is folly in any man to endanger himſelfe for the good of another: again, there be many valiant knights haue miſcarryed in ſeeking my loue, and I the vnhappieſt liueing, to ſee theſe vnfortunate dayes. Lady, quoth he what I haue vowed, I meane to accompliſh: Why then faire Knight, God bee thy ſpeed, and therewithall drew forth two Rings of Gold, giuing Valentine the one, and Orſon the other, alſo they ſate downe at the Table amongſt the other Knights, & were welcommed with great feaſtings. Being ſet at the Table Fezon ſtill fixed her eye moſt on *Orſon*, & *Orſon* vpon her, as it were enterchangeable glancing loue-lookes one to the other with exceeding gracious aſpects. Now, in the midſt of all theſe feaſtings the Greene knight (as his cuſtome was) came Thundering at the Gate, onely to haue a ſight of the beauteous Lady Fezon, for you ſhall vnderſtand that ſuch were the conditions betweene him and the Duke Savary, that euery day it ſhould be lawfull for him to enter his pallace to behold the Lady without contradiction. Being entred the great Hall, his manner was to cry out with a loud voice, ſaying, Valiant Duke of Aquitaine, haue you yet any more Champions to fight wᵗʰ me for ꝑ loue of this Lady? The D. anſwered, yea: I haue yet within my pallace, Sirteene valiant knights that meane to try their fortunes vpon thee, before they part my Countrey. Then ſaid the Greene

Knight

Knight, let mee ſee them, and likewiſe the faire Lady Fezon, enter ſayd the Duke for you haue free liberty. Herewithall the Greene Knight entred the Hall, ſternely beholding all the Knights one after another, at laſt, when hee had gone through them all, hee began to ſpeake to them on this maner: Lords, eate and drink, and make merry, for to morrows day ſhall bee your laſt: and know that it will fall out to all your ſhares to bee hanged in the top of my Tree, as many before you haue been ſerued. Valentine well marking his high words, grew exceeding angry, and at laſt began to anſwere him; Proud Knight, theſe vaunts might well haue lyen ſmothered in thy breaſt, for I tell thee, this day is come hither a Knight that ſhall hold thee tacke, more then any that ever yet encountred thee: and whereas thou triumphantly haſt conquered many, he it is ſhall vanquiſh thee, and leaue thy dead corps a prey for rauenous beaſts. Now Orſon vnderſtood that Valentine ſpoke all this of him, and alſo knew this to be the Greene Knight, by whom ſo many valiant men had loſt their liues: inſomuch that he ſaluted him with a fierce viſage, and whetting his teeth, leapt from the Table, & taking the Greene knight by the middle threw him vpon his neck, as if it had been a little Child, and hauing him at that aduantage, eſpying a Wall threw the Green knight with ſuch violence againſt the ſame, that all the beholders thought hee had verily broken his neck, for hee lay as dead, and ſo ſet him downe againe at the Table as before, and in a laughing geſture made ſigne that he would beare vpon his necke three ſuch as the Greene knight.

At this ſudden action of Orſons, all the knights there aſſembled began to laugh, and turning one towards another, ſayd: Now is he came indeed, that ſhall bee the ouerthrow of the Green Knight, but yet wee cannot chooſe but lament the woefull chance that ſhall befall the Lady Fezon, for he cannot ſpeake, and yet is worthy all honour amongſt the valianteſt. The Lady on the other ſide, beholding his valor was inſtantly ouercome with the loue of Orſon, that onely he conquered her heart, and left all the reſt hopeleſſe of euer gayning the Garland at which they aymed. By this time the Greene knight was again recouered, and counting it a

deed

deed of outrage, began thus to ſay in the foreſayd preſence. Lords, this Wilde man hath deceiued my truſt, for he came vpon me vnawares, without ſaying any word, but I thinke good to let you vnderſtand, that in the morning I ſhall be better prouided, and to the end I may make him an example to all that euer went before, I will ordaine for him a Gibet of purpoſe, higher and ſtronger then for any that hath been vanquiſhed by me: and thereon will I hang vp his beaſtly corps, for beaſts and birds to make their prey.

CHAP. XXI.

How Orſon encountred the Grecne knight, and what followed thereof. Alſo, how Valentine attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him.

ORſon perceiuing the Greene knight diſpleaſed, and to threaten him, began as faſt to chatter with his lips, making ſignes that he would meet him on ỹ morrow, and fight with him, and in token thereof, tooke off his hoode, and threw it on the ground as his gage: which Valentine ſeeing, ſpake thus to the Greene knight: Sir, the wild-man challengeth you, and in token thereof, hath throwne downe his gage, wherefore if your ſtomacke ſerue, I aduiſe you to take it vp. Hereat the Greene knight fretted ſo exceedingly, that he replyed neuer a word. Duke Sauary being preſent, ſaid vnto him: Sir knight, I well perceiue, that the battell will grow ſtrong betweene the Wilde-man and you, and I thinke that he will hold you tough play, wherefore if you chance to conquer him alſo, you may well report of your valor throughout the world, for hee hath tryed ſome part of his courage already, and in vanquiſhing him, you need not ſtand in feare of any. The greene knight hereat more and more enraged, ſwore by all his Gods, that ere the morrowes Sun was ſet, he would try the vtmoſt of his ſtrength, for he ſhould neuer returne againe from forth the field, but be hanged a great

great deale higher then any of the reſt: and with theſe words, hee left the Caſtle, and betooke him to his Pauillion.

Hee being departed the reſt of the knights ſtill remained with the Lady Fezon, making great ioy and ſaying one to the other, that the day was come that the Greene knight ſhould meet with his match. On the other ſide, Fame had ſo ſpread abroad the worthy act of Orſon the ſauage vpon the Greene knight, that multitudes of people reſorted into the Pallace, to ſee and behold him, inſomuch that the Duke commanded the gates to be ſhut againſt them. Orſon perceiuing the people ſo abundantly to approach, and heaoing the noiſe, leapt vp into a windoow, to behold the people. ſo that they willing to ſee him, and hee deſiring to ſee them, at night they all departed to their houſes. The people being departed and ſupper ended, they paſſed the reſt of the night in meriments, and ſo to bed. Valentine being brought to his Chamber went to bed, making ſignes to Orſon to lie downe by him: but he not regarding his kindnes, laid him downe vpon the ground according to his wonted vſe, and ſo paſſed away that night. Morning being come, Valentine and Orſon went into the Hall, where they found the faire Lady Fezon, accompanied with the other knights, holding a diſpute among themſelues, who ſhould firſt fight with the Greene knight. At laſt ſtood vp a worthy knight of France (called Galeram) and ſaid, Lords ſo you be pleaſed, I am the man intend the firſt tryall, to this they agreed, and preſently armed him. Being armed he came to the Lady, taking his leaue in all ioy, and ſhee to requite his kindneſſe gaue him free leaue, wiſhing the Gods to preſerue and keepe him from all danger. ſo that he may returne as Conqueror. The knight moſt humbly thanked her, and ſo tooke Horſe and haſted him toward the Tent of the Greene knight. The Greene knight perceiuing from farre his approach, ſet ſpurs to his Horſe, and encountred the famous knight Galeram ſo fiercely that he ſmot him off his Horſe to the earth. The Green knight ſeeing him on the ground, ſuddenly lighted from his Horſe and tooke off the Helme from his Head. Galeram fearing nothing but preſent death, yeelded to the mercy of him, but all in vaine, for without pittie, he firſt deſpoyled him off his

his armes, and after hanged him vpon a tree, as he had done the reſt before. *Orſon* perceiuing that *Galeram* was put to death, made ſignes with his hands that he would fight with him preſently, not letting him haue any reſpite: but Valentine anſwered him againe by ſignes, that he ſhould withdraw himſelfe for a while, for hee would firſt go try his owne ſtrength on him. Hereupon he preſently put himſelfe in armes, and being armed, tooke his way towards the beauteous Lady to take his leaue, as it becommed him: being come before her, ſhe grew wondrous ſorrowfull, and yet at laſt ſhee ſpake vnto him on this manner: Alas faire knight what madneſſe is this in you to aduenture your life for the loue of ſuch an vnfortunate Lady as I: well, if thou wilt needs run into danger, goe on, but I will inuocate the gods to ayd and aſſiſt thee againſt thine and mine enemy, and ſo farewell.

Leaue thus taken of the Lady, and the reſt of the knights, Valentine mounted his Horſe, to take his way towards the Greene Knight. As he was ready to put forth, he met with him a worthy knight, who was likewiſe enamored with the loue of the Lady and thus began to ſay to him: Sir, haue a little patience I entreat you, and ſuffer me to goe firſt. Friend (quoth Valentine) I freely grant your deſire, goe and returne with victory. This Knights name was *Tyris* borne in Savoy, a man of great birth and liuing, but riotouſly had run through his meanes leauing himſelfe little, ſaue onely his Horſe and Armes. Hauing thus obtained leaue of Valentine, he alſo tooke leaue of the Lords there aſſembled, and ſo departed vnto the Tent of the Greene Knight. The Greene Knight perceiuing *Tyris* to approach, lept out of his Pauillion to welcome him. *Tyris* ſeeing him, ſayd, Sir preſently mount thy Horſe and defend thy ſelfe, for I breath out defiance againſt thee: the Greene knight hearing him ſay ſo, called for his Horſe, which preſently was brought vnto him, and putting his foot into the ſtirrop, ſuddenly ſeated himſelfe in the ſaddle and betooke him to his ſpeare and Green ſhield, preparing to take their courſe each at other; but at the firſt encounter, the Greene knight ran ſo furiouſly, that hee ſmote *Tyris* quite through the body with his Speare, ſo that hee fell downe ſtarke dead; which hee perceiuing

ceiuing, put a Cord about his necke, and hanged him vp amongſt the reſt.

Valentine hearing of the death of Tyris was wonderfull ſorrowfull, yet taking courage he recommended himſelfe to the Gods: hauing thus done, he put ſpurs to his Horſe and took his way ſpeedily towards the Tent whereas the Greene Knight remained. When the Greene Knight eſpyed him, he was more fearefull of him then of all the reſt; wherefore he called vnto him, ſaying, Knight giue eare to that I now ſhall ſay, ſeeſt thou yonder Tree, there ſhalt thou find hanging a Greene ſhield, fetch it hither to me, and I ſhall reward thee liberally. Sir (ſayd Valentine) you haue ſeruants enough of your owne, ſend them, for by mee it ſhall neuer be fetcht. By my Law (quoth the Greene Knight) you ſhall eyther bring me the ſhield, or elſe know this, you ſhall neuer conquer me. When Valentine had well conſidered theſe words, hee ſpake, as touching the fetching of the ſhield, he valiantly rode towards the Tree, but hee loſt his labour, for he could not haue it, whereat he was ſorrowfull, and returning vnto the Green knight, in an angry mood, ſayd thus vnto him: go fetch thy ſhield thy ſelfe, for I cannot haue it, wherefore curſed be that Magician that ſo faſtned it, and an euill end betide him that ſent me thither to fetch it. Friend (qd. the Greene Knight) ſhall I tell thee wherefore I ſent thee thither, it was for that this ſhield was giuen vnto me by a Faiery, and therein remayneth ſuch vertue, that no man be he neuer ſo ſtrong can take it from the place where it is faſtned, ſaue only he alone, by whom I ſhall be ouercome: and for the doubt I ſtood in of thee, therefore ſent I thee thither: but now my doubt is ſatisfied, and therefore I aduiſe thee to returne to the place from whence thou cameſt, and ſaue thy life, for ſeeing thee ſo faire a Knight I am forced to pitty thee, and take no pleaſure in thy death: from the which thou canſt not eſcape, if thou fightſt with me. Further, to the end thou ſhouldſt not thinke I vtter theſe words to abuſe thy patience, know this, that there is none lyuing that can vanquiſh me, except firſt he be the Sonne of a King, and next ſuch a one as neuer ſucked the Breaſts of any woman. Now, if thou beeſt ſuch a one, thou maiſt ouercome mee, if not, thou doſt

but

but ſhorten thine owne daies by an untimely death. At theſe words Valentine tooke little pleaſure, knowing that by this relation hee could not be that man; but ſeeing that he was come to that enterpriſe, he would not turne till he had aſſailed his ſtrength againſt him: and therefore with a loud voyce he ſpake thus vnto the greene knight: Valiant and redoubted knight, I well vnderſtand I am not the man by whom you ſhall bee conquered, yet whatſoever I am, I will not depart hence vntill I haue fought with you. By the gods (quoth the greene knight) then thou haſt ſome ſecret treaſon to worke againſt mee, that thus thou runneſt vpon thy death wilfully, but ere I part with thee, I ſhall let thee know the price of this thy raſhneſſe, and therewithall leaped vpon his horſe, bidding one of his ſeruants to bring vnto him a box of pretious balme, the vertue of it was ſuch, that what wound ſoeuer he receiued, though neuer ſo mortall, it had power inſtantly to heale vp the breach, as diuers times before he had made triall of the ſame.

After he had receiued this box of oyntment, he ſuddenly put ſpurs to his horſe, and couching his ſpeare in his reſt both ran their courſe ſo furiouſly, that their ſpeares brake in many peeces. So bending themſelues to the next courſe, they valiantly diew out their ſwords whereat Valentine behaued himſelfe ſo nimbly, that he gaue the greene knight ſo fell a ſtroake, that he cut him thorow his armor, inſomuch that the blood iſſued out in great abundance. The greene knight feeling himſelfe wounded lift vp his arme to fetch a blow, that he ſtroke away a great peece of his thigh, and hauing thus wounded him, ſayd vnto him: You may ſee I can weeld a ſword aſwell as you, I tould you before that you would fall vnder my hand, and anon I ſhall be faine to hang vp your dead corps vpon a Tree, as I haue done the reſt of the knights that came before you. Pagan (ſayd Valentine) vaunt not thy ſelfe ouermuch, for as yet I am not conquered, therefore defend your ſelfe, and therwith he gaue the greene knight ſuch a blow, that he ſmote away a great quarter of his ſhield, and the greene knight at the ſame encounter brake his ſword vpon the helme of Valentine, and with the violence of the blow, felled him from off his horſe: Valentine being alwaies valiant, ſuddenly recouered himſelfe vpon his feet.

The Pagan seeing him rise vp, drew out a sharpe poynted knife, and threw it at Valentine, but he seeing it come, started a little aside, so that it missed him. The Greene knight being thus disarmed of his weapons, turned about his horse, thinking to haue recouered them againe, but Valentine being on the ground, and taking fit opportunity, cut off his horse feete, so that both he and his horse came tumbling to the earth. Being on the earth, he lightly arose againe, and then they were both together by strength of armes holding one another. But to bee short, the bickering was so fierce betweene them, that they were both sore wounded.

The Pagan quickly healed his wounds with the Balme before spoken of. This fight continued so long, that the day began to shut in, and both grew extreame weary. The greene knight was so hurt that he could not ouercome Valentine, and though he were euen spent in wearinesse, yet he proudly bore it out, saying, Knight giue ouer, for I perceiue thy wearinesse, and the Sunne declineth, therefore it would bee little honour for mee to conquer thee. Go returne againe to Aquitaine, and rest there this night, and report, that there neuer encountred me so valiant a Knight as thou art.

But meet me to morrow, and before thy comming take leaue of all thy friends, for thou shalt neuer returne. Valentine accepted his gentle offer, and was glad thereof, for he was weary and sore wounded. So going to his Horse which was, in another field, he returned backe againe to the City. When Duke Savary and his Lords saw Valentine returne, they were ioyfull, and receiued him in great Honour; amongst the rest there assembled, was Orson, who ran and caught him in his armes, and kissed him. Being come into the Pallace, the Duke demaunded what tydings from the greene knight. Sir (sayd Valentine) he resteth in his Pauillion, and I thinke he is of that puissant strength and courage, that there is not a man liuing able to vanquish him. Valentine (quoth the Duke) you haue escaped well, for neuer did any returne as yet but all haue perished vnder the hands of this greene knight, wherefore you haue proued your selfe a valiant Knight. Gracious Duke (sayd Valentine) of my Conquest ouer him I can make but small boast: but to morrow there is appointed a new triall of manhood,

and

and the victory may light vpon whom the Gods pleaſe to fauour: Hauing thus ended conference with the Duke Valentine was diſarmed, and then conducted to the Chamber of the Lady Fezon. The Lady was right ioyfull to ſee him returne with life from the Combate of the Greene knight. By this time ſupper drew on and the Duke taking his place at the Table, cauſed Valentine to bee ſet on his left hand, at the vpper end of the Boord, for the D. did honour him in the higheſt degree that might be. Supper being ended, Valentine withdrew himſelfe vnto his priuate Chamber, and the Greene knight reſted in his Pauillion, where we will leaue him, and ſpeake of Valentine, who being in his Chamber, made many Complaints.

CHAP. XXII.

How *Valentine* tooke good aduiſe, and ſent *Orſon* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Greene Knight, and how *Orſon* ouercame him.

VAlentine hauing appointed the morrow to fight with the Greene knight, began to bee troubled wonderouſly as hee lay in his Bed, ſtill bethinking him on what had happened the day before. At laſt when hee had ruminated all his imaginations, he began to reſolue vpon this concluſion. I am not neither can bee that kings Sonne that ſhould ouercome the green knight, for I can neyther remoue the ſhield hee ſent mee for, neither was I nourished without the breaſt of a Woman. Againe, I am very doubtfull of the Combate, and therefore ſtand wauering whereupon to relye. At laſt, hee began thus to thinke: what if Orſon ſhould bee armed in my ſtead, and therby try the worſt of fortunes wracke: why, it ſhall bee ſo. The breake of the day appearing, hee aroſe from his weary bed, and comming vnto *Orſon*, he tould him by ſignes how that hee ſhould put on his Armour, and take his Horſe, and make towards the Greene knights Pauillion for to fight with him.

Orson understanding by his signes his hearts intent, leaped and daunced vp and downe the hall ioyfully, making signes to Valentine againe, that the pagan knight should neuer scape his hands, and vewing his horse and armes, deliued nothing of him saue only a club of wood, such a one as he was accustomed to weelde, and shaking his head made signes that he would haue no other armor against the Pagan knight. Valentine seeing him so resolute, gaue him to vnderstand by signes, that he must put on the same armor, and ride vpon the same horse that Valentine brought out of France, for that the knight should know no other, but that it was Valentine that came against him. The wilde-man vnderstanding the subtilty intended, agreed vnto all that Valentine commanded him, So Orson was armed with the same Armour and horse which Valentine had employed the day before. Orson being thus armed (contrary to his accustomed manner) seemed a right personable creature, and made many signes, that he would ouercome the greene knight ere the noone-tyde of the day, without either mercy or pitty: and in these signes hee was so earnest, that he caused great laughter throughout all the assembly then present. Orson thus prepared he tooke his leaue of Duke Savary, and embraced Valentine, and made him signes to stand in feare of nothing, for before that he returned, he would bring the greene knight with him, either aliue or dead.

After this manner departed Orson, but before he took his horse, he had forgotten to take his leaue of the Ladye Lady Fezon, so returning backe againe to the Pallace, where the Lady late accompanied with her traine, and espying her, would haue run vnto her, and killed her, for by signes he gaue her to vnderstand, that for the loue of her, he would presently fight with the Pagan knight. The Lady in a smile, retorted backe againe (in signe) that shee loued him exceeding well, wishing him to beare himselfe valiantly, and at his returne backe againe, shee would grant vnto him her loue. Thus hauing taken his leaue of the Lady Fezon, and the rest of the Ladyes there assembled, hee betooke himselfe to his horse, and being gone from the Dukes Pallace, there was nothing so much talked of generally throughout the whole Cittie, but

that

that the wild man was gone to Combat with the Greene Knight, whereat was much wonder. It was not long but *Orſon* came vnto the Pauilion of the Green knight, and without any words ſmote the top thereof with his Speare, ſignifying defiance. The Green Knight taking this ruſticke ſalutations in great ſcorne, ſwore by Mahomet, that he would fetter his pride, ere the Euening Sunne tooke reſt, and therewithall mounted on his Steed, and couching his Speare in his reſt, and entred the field againſt *Orſon*.

Orſon ſeeing him in a readineſſe, ſeemed to giue backe as halfe afraid, and preſently hauing gathered more courage, they encountred with ſuch force, that both Horſe and man fell vnto the earth: Being both downe, they lightly recouered their feet, drew forth their Swords and layd one at the other right fiercely. The Green Knight being fired with anger and pride, ſmote *Orſon* ſuch a great blow, that he cut the Circle of Gold vpon his Helme, and ſmote a great peece of his ſhield quite off, and wounded *Orſon* ſo deeply, that with the outrage of the ſtroake, his Sword fell forth of his hand. *Orſon* ſeeing his bloud run downe about him, was farre more fierce then before, rolling his eyes, and ſhaking his head, at laſt, with his Sword, he tooke the Gyant ſuch a pat vpon his head, that he entred the fleſh, and bare a great part thereof afore him, and his Sword ſliding off his Head, tooke him on the arme ſo powerfully that the blood followed in great abundance. The Greene Knight hauing his former Balſamum, feared no wounds, which made *Orſon* thinke that it was in vaine any longer to vſe his Sword, ſith he could heale himſelfe ſo quickly.

Vpon this, *Orſon* threw away all his Armour and weapons, and ſuddenly ran vpon the Green Knight, and caught him faſt by the armes ſo ſtrongly, that he caſt him on the ground: Being vnder him *Orſon* tooke off his helme, and held him ſo down, that the Green Knight did yeeld to his mercy. *Orſon* nothing regarding his ſubmiſſion would ſuddenly haue taken away his life, if Valentine had not fallen in preſently to his reſcue by riding poſt to ſee the end of the Combat. Being come he made ſignes to *Orſon* that he ſhould not kill him, which *Orſon* obeyed, but ſtill kept him in

ſubiection. And at laſt, Valentine began to ſpeake to the Greene knight, ſaying, Proud knight, you well ſee that you are in the hands of your enemie, wherefore I thinke it fit that you ſuffer preſent death, for looke how you haue done to the vanquiſhed knights, by hanging them on yonder Tree, ſo likewiſe you your ſelfe ſhould be hanged vpon the higheſt branch of all, aboue the reſt. Alas (quoth the Greene knight) you ſeeme to be a man of pitty furniſhed with courteſie, therefore my requeſt vnto you is to ſpare my life. No (quoth Valentine) that ſhall I not, except vpon condition: firſt that thou renounce thy Paganiſme: and ſecondly, goe with me into France to king Pepin, telling him that by Valentine and Orſon you were ouercome in ſingle combat: To all theſe conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my oath to performe whatſoeuer I haue already ſpoken.

Then Valentine made a ſigne vnto Orſon that he ſhould rife, which

which he readily obeyed, but ſo, that he left him nothing about him to make any further reſiſtance. Being vpon his feet, he ſpake thus vnto *Valentine*: Sir, it was you that combated againſt me yeſterday, therefore you, and none but you did I expect this day alſo: but I ſee I am conquered by another, euen ỹ ſame that in the Dukes pallace threw me vpon the ground. True (quoth Valentine) the very ſame. Why then (quoth the Green knight) I ſhall reueale vnto thee one ſecret more, and I beſeech thee to grant vnto me my requeſt: Send this knight that hath conquered me to yonder Tree, and if he bring away with him the ſhield there faſtned, then am I well aſſured, he is the man ſhould conquer mee, otherwiſe there is no man liuing can Tryumph in my conqueſt. Herevpon Valentine made a ſigne vnto Orſon to fetch away that ſhield, who did as hee appointed him, and comming neere the tree, hee ſtretched forth his arme to take it downe, and ſuddenly it leaped into his hand, and ſo hee brought it with him to the Greene Knight. When he ſaw *Orſon* haue the ſhield, his heart ſmote againſt his ſides, and throwing himſelfe at his feet, would haue kiſſed them: but *Orſon* receiuing ſignes from Valentine to the contrary, would not ſuffer him, but tooke him by the Armes and lifted him vp: Being vpon his feet, hee ſpake thus: Alas, I of all others owe vnto you all my ſeruice, and all reuerence, for now I am aſſured that you are both a hardy and a valyant knight, and amongſt all other I confeſſe, that by conquering mee, you haue woone vnto your ſelfe euerlaſting fame.

Moreouer, this aſſure your ſelfe, that hee that conquers mee, can bee no leſſe then Sonne vnto a king and Queene, and muſt be ſuch a one as neuer ſucht the breaſts of any Woman: and that this ſhall appeare to be the truth, I ſhall further proue it by my ſiſter Clerimond, for thee hath a Head of Braſſe that telleth her the aduentures and fortunes that to her and all of her generation ſhall befall. Likewiſe, that this Head ſhall continue ſpeaking vntill ſuch time as the moſt Worthy of the World enter into the Chamber where it now ſtandeth, and hee being once entred, the ſayd Head ſhould looſe his vertue, and is the onely man to haue my Siſter *Clerimond* to Wife,

wherefore (faire Knight) theſe things thus falling out as you ſee, I greatly deſire you would Wed my Siſter, as the moſt hardieſt and renowneſt knight of the World.

CHAP. XXIII.

Orſon having conquered the *Greene* Knight, *Valentine* cauſed him to be Chriſtned, and ſending him vnto King *Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by meanes of the *Greene* Knight.

THe Green knight hauing made this motion of the marriage of his Siſter, gaue vnto Valentine a Ring of Gold, vpon condition, that hee would carry that Ring vnto her: which Ring Valentine accepted, and the Greene Knight yeelded himſelfe as a Priſoner, and is now going towards *France*, to accompliſh that Oath that hee before had giuen him. Valentine hauing receiued this Ring, neuer reſted till hee had ſeene the Lady ſo commended vnto him. After this the Greene knight (by conſent) was Crowned king of the Greene Mountaine, and there held great ſtate: preſently vpon this league of friendſhip concluded, he gaue commandment throughout all his Hoaſt, that euery man ſhould depart away from the confines of *Aquitaine*, and returne vnto their owne Countries without doing any further damage vnto Duke Sauaries Country. The Pagan Army thus diſmiſſed, Valentine and *Orſon* tooke and led him as a Priſoner into the City of Aquitain, whereat was no little ioy: and the Duke with all his Lords receiued him with great Triumph into the Citie. The Greene Knight being thus brought as a priſoner to the Duke began to ſay on this manner; My Lords you owe much honour vnto the knight that hath conquered me: and further I giue you to vnderſtand for certaine, that he can be no leſſe then Sonne vnto a king: and alſo, that he neuer ſucked womans breaſt, for if hee had hee could not haue been my Conqueror: for ſo it was euer ſayd by the Brazen head that

ſtandeth

ſtandeth in the Chamber of my ſiſter Clerimond. Quoth the Duke well may this carry ſome likelyhood of truth, for hee hath borne himſelfe very valiant againſt you: wherefore, I thinke it my part to honour him with my vtmoſt endeavours.

By this time is this Worthy traine entred the Dukes Pallace, whether the Duke commanded his Daughters preſence, and then he ſayd vnto her: Daughter, behold here the Greene Knight, that hath for your loue made ſpoyle of my Country, and I was no way able to repell him backe, but onely by this valiant Knight that Valentine hath brought along with him from the Court of King Pepin, who hath extraordinarily freed vs of our feares: wherefore, this is my deſire, that as he hath conquered yours and mine enemies, ſo he may alſo conquer your loue, wherevnto I right willingly agree that you ſhould haue him for your Husband. The Duke hauing thus ſayd, the Lady anſwered for her ſelfe in this manner: My redoubted Lord and Father, you know I am your Daughter, therfore there is no reaſon why I ſhould reſiſt, but do ſubmit my ſelfe to your diſpoſe: for if I ſhould do otherwiſe, it were in me great diſobedience. And againe, my Lord, you know promiſe is already paſt, that whoſoeuer he was that could vanquiſh the Pagan Knight, ſhould for his labour receiue me as his Wife. Now my Lord, the day of deliuerance is come, ſo then (according to your promiſe) you muſt giue him to me, and I receiue him as my lawfull ſpouſe: Otherwiſe, I ſhould make voyd the Edict before gone throughout the world, and you thought falſe in your promiſes. Daughter (quoth the Duke) ye haue ſpoke right graciouſly, and your anſwer pleaſeth me highly, and not onely mee, but all that are about vs: wherefore it were not amiſſe to know of the Conqueror Knight whether he will haue you. If hee agree vnto this match I ſhall giue him in dowre halfe my Country of Aquitaine. Hereupon Valentine ſtanding by, demanded of Orſon by ſignes whether he would haue the faire Lady Fezen to Wife who anſwered againe by ſignes that he would neuer haue other. Then cauſed the Duke to be brought before him a Prieſt, who then contracted them: and ſo there times were paſſed with many diſports. Theſe things thus ended, *Orſon* made ſignes vnto the Lady, that

hee

he would never lie with her till he had gotten the vse of his tongue, and that his companion Valentine had conquered the loue of the lady Clerimond, Of all which, more you shall heare hereafter.

CHAP. XXIIII.

How the same night that *Orson* was made sure to the Lady *Fezon*, an Angell appeared vnto *Valentine* : and of the charge shee gave him.

The day being past with great banquetings and solemnity, wherein Fezon was assured vnto Orson : the night approached, and euery man betooke him to his rest : Amongst the rest, Valentine and Orson were lodged most richly in a goodly Chamber, and in the dead time of the night Valentine had the apparition of an

Angell

Angell appeared vnto him, ſaying: Valentine (know this) that in the morning thou ſpeedily depart this Land, and take along with thee *Orſon*, by whom the Greene Knight hath been vanquiſhed, and without further delay get thee to the Caſtle of Ferragus, there ſhalt thou find the Lady Clerimond, by whome thou ſhalt vnderſtand of whence thou art deſcended.

This ſtrange viſion drawe Valentine into a Thouſand teares, and in great melancholly paſſed hee away the night. The day being broken, hee cauſed Orſon to ariſe, and being ready they both haſted them vnto the Dukes Pallace, where he found his Barons attending on him, and amongſt the reſt there preſent, the Greene Knight not long after entred the Duke, being entered, the greene Knight took an occaſion to give him the time of the day, and began to ſpeake vnto him on this manner: Moſt renowned Duke, I freely confeſſe my ſelfe vanquiſhed, and withall renounce all right vnto your Daughter concluding an euerlaſting peace with you, vpon condition, that you cauſe me to baptized. Knight ſayd the Duke, well haue you ſayd, I grant your requeſt: When the the Prieſt was come that ſhould baptize him, Valentine being preſent, began thus to ſay: Lords, and the reſidue here aſſembled, may it pleaſe the valyant Duke to graunt me one boone, which is this, that the name of this Knight may be called Pepin, it is the name of the moſt mighty king of France, euen hee that nouriſhed and ſoſtered me eben from my Cradle. The Duke conſented vnto Valentines demand, ſo he was called Pepin after the baptiſme, the Duke made a motion to Valentine and Orſon for to wed his Daughter the beauteous Lady Fezon: but Valentine not allowing thereof, made this excuſe that both he and *Orſon* had vowed to goe to Jeruſalem ere they did attempt any other action, after the conqueſt of the Greene Knight.

The Duke hearing this excuſe, gaue them leaue, vppon this condition, that *Orſon* ſhould take an oath to returne againe into Aquitaine, at his comming back from thence. To this Oath they both agreed. The ſame houre alſo the green knight tooke leaue of the Duke of Aquitaine, and went his way into France, to keepe his promiſed faith to king Pepin. Before his departure Valentine

asked

asked him the ring that he had promiſed. who gaue it vnto him, ſaying: whatſoeuer he be that beareth this about him, ſhall neuer ſtand in feare of drowning, nor be afraid of falſe accuſation. Then Valentine tooke the ring, and put it on his finger: ſo Orſon and he tooke leaue, and departed the way towards the Lady Clerimond, to finde out the Caſtle of Ferragus: and the greene knight likewiſe tooke his leaue for France, to yeeld himſelfe vnto King Pepin. Much about this time Blandimain Squior to the diſtreſſed Lady Bellyſant was arriued at king Pepins Court, clad in the habit of a Pilgrim, and hauing ſaluted the King, he wondred at this his vnlooked for ſhape, and at laſt asked him from what ſepulchre he was come. Worthy king (ſayd Blandimain) Iam no Pilgrim, although I haue taken that ſhape vpon me, but onely to come more ſafely vnto you, haue I betaken me to this habite: Wherefore know, that I am a meſſenger ſent from the high and mighty Lady your ſiſter, that by treaſon and falſe accuſations hath been baniſhed her Country by the Emperour Alexander, and at this time liueth in great ſorrow of heart, only for that you haue vniuſtly bent your heart againſt her, and ſought no way to relieue her miſery.

Chap. XXV.

How king *Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* & *Orſon* were his Nephewes, by the report of *Blandimain*: And how the greene knight ſubmitted himſelfe, according to his promiſe made unto *Valentine*.

BLandimain hauing deliuered his meſſage, the King began to demand of him where his ſiſter was. Blandimain replied, I know right well where ſhe is, but I haue giuen her my word neuer to diſcouer to any: But worthy King, if you make doubt of her loyalty, I ſhall bring you a man that will fight in her quarrell to proue her honeſt. Nay (quoth the king) I haue ſeene triall enough thereof already by the downefall of the Arch priеſt. Alſo I haue made much meanes to heare of her, but cannot heare any tydings of her: and indeed that which moſt of all grieueth me, is, that

that ſhe was great with child when ſhe was expulſed the kingdome. neither am I aſſured, whether ſhee was euer deliuered of that burthen. My Lord (quoth Blandimain) know this for truth, that my Lady layd her great belly in the Foreſt at *Orleance*, and whileſt ſhe diſpatched me to get her the helpe of women, or euer I could returne, ſhe was deliuered of two faire Sonnes, the one of which was carried violently from her by a Beare into the wood, ſhee neuer wiſt whether, but ſhe followed the Beare ſo long, till at laſt I found her in a dangerous ſwound vpon the ground. I comming to her, tooke her vp in my armes, and comforted her ſo well as I could, till being ſomewhat recouered, in woefull ſighes ſhee vnfolded vnto mee the whole manner of the loſſe of her Childe by the Beare: and for the other ſhe had left it vnder a tree: I hearing her ſay ſo, haſted towards that tree whereas I left her, but being come thither, I could not finde the other childe neither. And thus (worthy King) haue I related vnto you the whole ſtory of your ſiſter, and her two Infants in the Foreſt, and other tydings haue I none, but this, that I am that Blandimain that you gaue vnto your ſiſter to attend her, when ſhe married the Emperour Alexander. The King giuing eare vnto this tale, at laſt ſayd: Alas Blandimain, thy words ſtrike me into a thouſand feares, what ſhould become of my ſiſter, but yet ſeeing thou canſt ſay no more, tell mee yet how long agoe this is that thou haſt told vnto me. My Lord (quoth he) it was euen that very day you met mee in the Foreſt of *Orleance*, and I related vnto you the pitteous tydings of your ſiſters baniſhment. This ſtrucke the king into ſuch admiration, that he began to recollect his wits, & then preſently came into his minde the finding of Valentine in the Foreſt and how by the ſame Valentine, Orſon was conquered in the ſame wood. Then hee began againe to thinke on the ſtory that Blandimain had told him, and thereby knew that theſe were the two babes brought forth by his ſiſter, wherefore he ſent for his Queene, and other Ladies, to let them vnderſtand what Blandimain had declared, ſaying: My Lords, I haue long time nourished & brought vp in my Court two poore Children: and now it plainely doth appeare they are Sons to an Emperour, and my neere kinſmen, Valentine the one whom

I

I found in the Foreſt of Orleance, brought forth there by my ſiſter Bellyſant, in the time of her exile: and Orſon who was likewiſe vanquiſhed by Valentine, to be his naturall brother, and both Sons to the Emperour of Greece. At theſe tydings all the Court was wonderfull ioyfull, ſaue onely Hautray & Henry, who in outward ſhew ſeemed glad, but were in their hearts very ſorrowfull, for aboue all things they deſired the death of Valentine, that next him they might worke their wills on their youngeſt brother Charlemain, againſt whom they chiefly oppoſed themſelues, as hereafter will more plainely appeare.

But to returne back againe vnto Blandimain, who hearing the King to ſpeake thus much of the two children, demaunded of the King if hee knew in what Countrey they were: Why (ſayd the king) one of theſe I haue brought vp in my Court along time, in ſuch faſhion, that he is become a right valyant knight, and by his valour hath conquered his Brother, being a wilde man liuing in the Wood at Orleance like a beaſt, and one that did much damage to all the Country thereabout. Hauing conquered him, he brought him to my Court, where hauing lined ſome ſmall time, then both departed, and tooke their way vnto Aquitaine to fight with a right worthy Champion called the greene Knight, and ſince there departure I neuer heard what became of them. Sir (ſayd Blandimain) according vnto the tale you haue told, I remember well, that neere Aquitaine met I two ſuch, but I am much troubled that I knew them not. So the King muſing at theſe accidents, cauſed Blandimain to bee highly feaſted, and held as a Companion amongſt his other Lords. Now it happened, that on the ſame day the greene Knight (of whom we haue before made mention) arriued in Paris at the kings Court: aſſoone as he came into the preſence of the King, hee ſaluted the King with great reuerence. The King ſeeing him all in Armor, marueiled much thereat, and at laſt demanded the cauſe of his ſo appearing, whom he was and wherefore he came: The green knight replying againe on this manner; Honourable king know that I am deſcended from the Sarazins, both by Father and Mother: and true it is that I am that Knight that for the loue of the Lady Fezon, Daughter to the

Duke

Duke of Aquitaine, I haue for one whole yeare holden the D. as my Vaſſall and in my ſubiection, and hauing him thus vnder me, I tooke a Truce with him for ſix months vpon theſe conditions, that if within that time he found not forth a Knight that by force of Armes ſhould conquer me, I was to haue his faire Daughter Fezon to wife: On the other ſide if I were conquered I ſhould remoue away my ſiege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing him any further damnage. So it is that a long time I was ſought withall, by diuers valiant Knights of all Countryes, yet their was not any that could ouercome me, but endured death and were ſtill hanged vpon a Tree, at laſt it fell out, that there aſſayled me two worthy knights, the one named Valentine, & the other *Orſon*. Valentine fought with me one whole day, wherein he bore himſelfe ſo bravely, that night comming on we were forced to giue ouer, all wounded tyred, and weary. The next morning when the Battel ſhould be again renewed, his fellow *Orſon* armed him in Valentines Armor, entred the field in moſt fierce and diſdayneful manner offring me defiance: I ſcorning any Competitor, addreſt out my ſelfe againſt him, but little abayled my ſtrength, for in the end hee ouercame mee, and would haue taken away my life had not Valentine come in vpon vs, and refued me vpon condition, firſt, that I ſhould forſake Mahomet, Secondly, that I ſhould come vnto you and yeeld my ſelfe at your command, and to ſtand to your cenſure either for life or death. Againe when I receiued Baptiſme, he cauſed me to be called Pepin, and ſo is my name.

The king hauing heard al this long ſtory from the green knight, made this anſwer in the preſence of all his Barons: Welcome to vs, and of your company we are right glad, Liue with vs in our court, and be ſecure, for I freely grant you your life: and promiſe you further, that if you will tarry with vs in this country, I will endow you with many faire lands and poſſeſſions. The king ſhewing himſelfe thus gracious, demanded of him where theſe knights were that had conquered him? Marry quoth the greene K.) I left them both in Aquitaine, with the valiant D. Sauary, who holdeth them in as great reſpect, as any that are remaining in his court.

Thus you may now perceiue, that by the worthy of

Blan-

Blandimain and the greene knight, King Pepin had perfect intelligence of his beauteous ſiſter, and his two valiant Nephewes. After all theſe things thus happened, King Pepin made a ſolemne vowe, that he would go himſelfe in perſon into Greece, to tell the Emperour of theſe gladſome tydings, and to take order to ſend abroad into all lands to finde her out.

CHAP. XXVI.

How King *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*, to beare theſe tydings: and how before his returne, he warred upon the mighty *Souldan*, who had beleagred *Conſtantinople*.

KIng Pepin having put himſelfe in a readineſſe to depart into Greece, went forth, and before much time was ſpent, he arrived at Rome. The Pope hearing of his approach, received him with great honour, and much Feaſting. Upon a day as he ſate at dinner with the Pope, in his Pallace pontificall, there came tydings vnto him, that the great Souldan of Ægypt had beſieged Conſtantinople. The knight that brought this meſſage, after his ſalutations ended, began thus to proceed: Holy Father, the Sarazens with much power haue beſieged, and wrongfully ouer-run Conſtantinople, and hee gaue mee charge to craue your ayd againſt theſe enemies of Chriſtendome. When the Pope vnderſtood theſe ill-welcome tydings, hee was driuen into a wonderfull dumpe, not knowing any preſent way to ſend them reliefe: but K. Pepin being in preſence, comforted him greatly, and ſayd: Holy Father, take no care for this buſineſſe, for I requeſt but a competent ſumme of money and men: and I ſhall leade them to Conſtantinople with ſuch a couragious heart, that I ſhall put the Souldan and all his Forces to the worſt, ſuch an inueterate hatred beare I againſt theſe Pagan deuills. The Pope hearing him ſo reſolute, thanked him for his couragious heart, and ſayd vnto him: Right Chriſtian king, ſeeing thou doſt proffer thy ſelfe in perſon to vndertake this ſeruice, I ſhall with all conuenient ſpeed prouide for a buſineſſe of ſuch import. Preſently hereupon by a day all things were prepared, and with an Armye of thir-

ty

ty thousand Romaines king Pepin departed, and assoone as possible hee could, he arrived at Constantinople. Being thither come, he found the City round begirt, and the Citizens in great feare of the Souldans army, betaking themselues into the City, keeping the same against all the forces of the Pagans.

The Emperor himselfe was forced to retire into the City, and being cooped vp into so small a roome, his troubled thoughts euermore ran vpon the Lady Bellysant, whom he had cruelly banished, alwayes fearefull that shee was dead, for it was now full Twenty Winters past since the time of her exile. By this time is king Pepin come within two miles of Constantinople, and there landed his men, raising Pauillions, pitching of Tents, and ranging his forces into battell aray. The Souldan hauing knowledge of his arriuall, as also of his prouision, was much abashed thereat, and with all diligence returned to his strong Pauillion: and being set down in his magnificence, there came vnto him certaine of his campe, fearefully and doubtfully saying thus vnto him; Great and mighty Souldan, we come to giue you true intelligence, that there is lately arriued to the Number of Two hundred Thousand Romaines to bid vs present battell vnder the conduct of Pepin king of France. Wherefore it onely resteth how that you take speedy aduise how to preuent and resist these forces. Peace fellowes (quoth the Souldan) be not affrayd, for you are deluded by some false report, the whole Romaine Nation is not able to furnish forth such an Army: Goe on, I say, courageously, for I sweare by Mahomet ere long I shall bring vnder my subiection both the Kingdome of Rome and France, also. Wherefore call vp your Troopes, plant them, & put our Squadron in a readines for to receiue them.

The morrow following king Pepin set his army in order of battell, fiercely to assault the Pagan hoast, and secretly sent a Letter to the Emperor, being in the City, whereby he requested the Emperor, that they within the City should put themselues in readines, and so issue out vpon the Pagans on that side: for king Pepin and his Companies would receiue them on the other side: then being all encompassed about, there was hope to get the day of the Sarazins.

The Emperor receiued these Letters ioyfully, and did as king

Pepin commanded them, and ſallied forth of the City, bidding battell to the Sarazins. They were no ſooner entred the field, but they perceiued the army of King Pepin, marching on with banners diſplayed, and noyſe of Trumpets ſounding in moſt couragious manner. This made the Pagans to looke about, and the Souldan calling to him two of his hardieſt men of war, commanded them ſecretly to goe through the hoaſt of the Chriſtians, and if it were poſſible to number them. Theſe two did as the Souldan commanded, but being come neere the hoaſt of king Pepin, the green knight eſpyed them comming downe a little hill, drawing ſomewhat neerer, hee diſcerned they were Sarazins, and preſently put ſpurs to his horſe, he ran againſt them with ſuch fury, that his ſpeare brake vpon his own thigh: The Sarazins ſeeing him run ſo fiercely did not flee, but receiued him valiantly, as hereafter followeth in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XXVII.

How the Greene Knight Iuſted againſt the two *Sarazins*, and having ſlayne the one, the other fled: and how King *Pepin* and his hoaſt were lodged within *Conſtantinople*.

THe Greene knight having recouered a new ſpeare, hee ran fiercely againſt both the Sarazins, and hitting one of them in a very dangerous place, ſmote him to the earth, ſo that hee never roſe, then making againſt the other, he gaue him ſuch a wound, that ſodainely he fled away. King Pepin ſeeing this accident, preſently aſſailed the Souldans hoſt, and Myllon Daugler ſlew the king of Aquile, and three other ere he gaue ouer the field, with many and diuers other worthy deeds of Chiualry. The Souldan ſeeing him ſo to play the Deuill in his Hoaſt, cryed out to follow Daugler who had made ſuch hauocke: ſo they did as he commanded, perſuing him ſo cloſe on all ſides, that at length they cut off one of his Horſes thighes, forceing him to fall vpon the earth, and had there periſhed, had not the Greene knight (maugre all the Sarazins) thruſt himſelfe into the preaſe, flaying and beating down as many as made any reſiſtance, and in the end ſo relieued Daugler,

ler, that he freſhly horſed him, and brought him cleane out of danger. After this, they both ſoyned together in ſuch furious outrage, that they ſpared none that came in their way. Fierce was this battell, and endured long, but king Pepin and his men made great ſlaughter among the Pagans: But notwithſtanding all this their valor, they had loſt the day, had it not been for the Emperor that with his hoaſt valiantly aſſayled the Pagans on the other ſide, and made amongſt them a very bloudy ſlaughter. The King ſeeing the courage of the Emperour ſo mighty gathered together againe his ſcattered Troopes, and entred into the battell with great fury, and now were the Pagans begirt round about. Aſſoone as the king came vnto the ſight of Emperor, he ſaid vnto him: great Prince, ſhew thy ſelfe right valiant, and this day ere night, I ſhall tell thee tydings of thy faire Lady Bellyſant.

Theſe words added freſh courage vnto the Emperor, who cryed out to his men, Courage for Conſtantinople, and he that wins honour ſhall be richly rewarded: And with theſe words entred again into the thickeſt of the battell: where he, king Pepin, and the green Knight ſo valiantly behaued themſelues, that which way ſoeuer they turned, they made way before them.

Now began the Sarazins to doubt whether they ſhould euer eſcape away alive: and therefore, fearing the worſt, betooke themſelues to flight: But their flight being eſpyed by the King of Sclavonia, who led the reward for the Souldan, preſently rushed in with his troopes conſiſting of fifty thouſand fighting men, making withall ſo great a ſhout, that it ſeemed by the ſound thereof, their part got the better. The Emperour and the king perceiuing their comming, wiſely conſidered that their men were tyred and out-worne, and the enemy freſh and luſty, ſounded a retraite and retyred themſelues and all their Souldiers into the City. The Souldan ſeeing this, followed vpon them, and ſtrongly beſieged the City round about, ſo that neither the Emperour nor king could yſſue out thereof. Thus they abode, till they were well-nigh famiſhed, thinking thereby vtterly to ouerthrow the Chriſtians. So leaue we them, and returne againe to Valentine and *Orſon*, who for the loue of *Clerimond* haue aduentured, as you haue already heard.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* arrived at the strong Castle wherein fayre *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen Head they had knowledge of their Parents.

After many dayes of travell, at last Valentine and Orson lighted upon an Iland, in which Iland stood a Castle strong and impregnable, the covering whereof was of shining mettall, glittering so in the Sunne that it drave Valentine into suspition, that it was it whereunto the Green knight had directed him, to have a fight of the fayre Lady Clerimond. At all adventures he maketh way towards this castle, and at last entred into this Iland by one of the Ports thereof. Being entred, he demaunded who was owner of that castle which appeared so sumptuous to the eye? Answer was returned, that the castle was in the keeping of the fayre Clerimond, sister unto the Gyant Ferragus, and builded by a mighty man in substance, a Sarazin: the which Sarazin, amongst all other his excellent workes done in that castle, he caused one chamber to be richly adorned: of the which chamber more shal be spoken of in that place.

Moreover, it was told unto Valentine amongst other things, that in the chamber stood an excellent Pillar made by Art, upon the which Pillar stood a Head of Brasse, compoled along time before by the Negromancy of a Fatery, the which head was of such an excellent compassion, that it gave answere to any thing that was demanded. Valentine hearing this strange relation of the castle, was right glad, for now he was verily perswaded that this must needs be the very castle he had so long time sought, and wherein the green knight told him he should find his sister, so highly praised of all nations for her excellent beauty. Having gathered knowledge enough, he left questioning any further, and went on his way accompanied with Orson, to see if he could get entrance into this castle. By this time they were come to the gates thereof, where thinking to enter, they were resisted by Ten sturdy knights, that kept the gate night and day.

When

When they ſaw Valentine and *Orſon* make proffer to enter, they ſayd vnto them: Lords or what euer ye be, withdraw your ſelues back, for into this caſtle entreth none, of what birth ſoeuer, without the leaue and licence of a maydē, to whom we (as guard) do appertaine. Why (quoth Valentine) goe tell her, and aske whether it be her pleaſure we enter or not? Hereupon one of them entred into the chamber where faire Clerimond was, and kneeling vnto her, ſayd: Lady before your gate ſtand two gallants that would enter your caſtle, they ſeeme fierce and courageous, full of high ſpirit, and men far diſagreeing from the lawes and religion of our country: Now faire Lady ſay, ſhall they haue entrance? deſcend (quoth the Lady) while I go forth into a windowe to take a view of them, and let the gates be ſurely kept, for I meane to queſtion with them my ſelfe. The porter did as ſhe commanded, then Clerimond that was well languaged, leaned out of a windowe vpon

a Cuſhion couered with gold, and ſayd vnto Valentine: what are you, that dare aſſay to enter my caſtle without leaue? Lady quoth Valentine with an vndaunted courage) I am a knight that trauelleth this way, and would gladly ſpeake with that head of braſſe that remaineth within this caſtle, if it be your pleaſure, becauſe (as I do vnderſtand) it reſolueth doubts. Knights (quoth the Lady) vpon theſe termes you may not enter: but if you can bring me any certaine ſigne from one of my Brethren, either from King Perrigus, or the green knight Lord of Tartary, then may you freely enter this caſtle: Or by one other meanes yet may you enter, that is, by the Seneſchall of this place, with whom you muſt run fiue courſes with your Speare to try your valor: wherefore now be aduiſed, either fetch me ſome certaine tokens from one of my Brothers, or try your fortune in ſingle combat, as I haue told you. Lady (quoth Valentine) againſt your Seneſchal I dare aduenture, for I had rather win my entrance by ponderous blowes, then by entreats and fawning ſpeeches. This choice chole Valentine rather then to bewray the ring which he had brought along with him, giuen him by the green knight, to preſent to his ſiſter *Clerimond*. The Lady ſeeing his reſolute hardines, ſuddenly fell in loue with him, and preſently went into the chamber where the head of braſſe ſtood and ſayd thus vnto it: What is that knight of courage that would ſo gladly enter this caſtle? Lady (quoth the head) of that knight, ſhall you know nothing, vntill ſuch time as you haue brought him before mee. Clerimond at this anſwer ſeemed very ſorrowfull, for ſhe was greatly in loue with Valentine.

CHAP. XXIX.

How (when as *Valentine* was before the caſtle talking with the Guard) *Clerimond* bewayled the loue of *Valentine*, And how hee Iuſted for the entrance, and ouercame the Seneſchall.

CLerimond pondering in her minde the words of Valentine, being ouercome with affection, ſaid on this manner: Ah, Valentine is valorous, and beautifull, and if I haue power ouer the head of braſſe, I ſhall neuer take

take other husband then this knight. Hereupon shee sent for the Seneschall, and told him that this knight would enter the Castle. The Seneschall hereat enraged, began thus: Lady, if hee bee so hardy to attempt it, I shall quickly make him know that hee commeth too late to gaine your love.

Seneschall (say the Lady) since it must be so go arme you presently, and so he departed to put himselfe in Armes. Being armed he mounted his horse, couched his speare in rest, and withall issued out of the gate in readinesse: The Lady also got into a windowe to behold the combate. When Valentine saw the Seneschall to come towards him, he couched his speare, and putting spurs to his horse, they met so fiercely, that their speares brake in peeces: presently having a new supply, sodainely they met so fiercely, that they fell to the ground horse & man: but Val: horse got up with his master.

Valentine being thus ſaued by his horſe, ſayd vnto the Seneſchall; Riſe vp and newly mount your ſelfe, for there is no honour in conquering an enemy at aduantage. Whereupon the Seneſchall was freſhly mounted, and new ſpeares giuen them againe. Then took they a freſh carriere, and herewithall Valentine ſo incountred him about the head, that he boare away his helme, and threw both horſe and man downe vpon the earth. The Seneſchall ſeeing himſelfe in danger, ſayd thus vnto Valentine; Knight, I know not from whence you are, nor of what parentage, but neuer in my life found I a man of thy valour: wherefore I yeeld, and withall giue thee leaue to enter this Caſtle at thy pleaſure (only vpon this condition, that you ſpeake not vnto the Lady Clerimond without my leaue.) Nuath Valentine thou haſt requeſted that which I will not grant, for know it was for her loue that I came hither, and though I neuer yet ſaw her, yet are my thoughts on fire. Therefore from hence I will neuer part, till I haue both ſpoken with her, and alſo with the brazen Head. The Lady all this while ſtanding at the window wondred what conference paſſed betweene theſe two Champions, and at laſt thus ſayd vnto one of her Maydens; See how indiſcreet this Seneſchall is, to fight with ſuch a valyant knight, who long ſince might haue taken away his life. When Valentine ſaw the great pride of the Seneſchall, and that hee ſtood out with him, being his Priſoner, he ſodainely ran againſt him another courſe, and therewithall gaue him ſo deadly a ſtroake, that hee ran him cleane through the Body, ſo that hee fell off his horſe ſtarke dead: at the which, the Lady Clerimond was exceeding ioyfull, commanding them to ſet open the gates, and that Valentine ſhould be brought vp vnto her into the great Hall. When that the Lady had beheld Valentine well, ſhee came towards him, and ſayd vnto him on this manner: Knight, you are moſt welcome, for I neuer ſaw a more valyant and courageous man all the dayes of my life: Enter my Caſtle, for it appeareth by your valour, and Chiualrie, that you are diſcended from the loynes of ſome Royall Stocke. Lady, know thou for a certainty, my name is called Valentine, a poore aduenturer; for neyther my ſelfe, nor this my Companion euer knew from what Stocke wee were diſcended.

The

He was nourished by a beast in the Forrest, and lived there like a wilde man, whereas I conquered him by my sword. Besides, he never spake in his life more then you see at this instant. Wherefore Lady, thus far haue I travelled to get knowledge of my Parents, but chiefly to gaine the love of you being so faire a Lady.

CHAP. XXX.

How *Valentine* shewed *Clerimond* her Brothers Ring, which the greene knight gave him, and how hee questioned with the Brazen head, which told him from whence he was descended.

VAlentine having purchased free entrance by overcoming the Seneschall; at last he shewed the ring that the greene knight had given him, and finding delivered it the Lady, who gladly received the token saying: faire knight had you shewed this ring when you first entred necessarie into this Castle, you had never endured the danger that you haue now escaped; but sith it hath pleased you to try your valour, I cannot better commend you, then to admire your brave courageous heart. Whiles Valentine and the Lady were thus talking together, the tables were spread, the Lady sate downe, and Valentine was also placed iust against her, in whom she tooke her greatest felicity as he in her. Dinner being ended Clerimond arose from the Table, and taking Valentine by the hand, said thus vnto him. Sir well haue you purchased your welcome, desiring to enter into my priuiest chamber, and so you shall, euen that chamber wherein the brazen head standeth, the which head shall declare all that you can desire, and make no doubt but it will tell you most ioyfull tydings; therefore both you and your companion come along with me, for I as greatly long to heare, as you desire to be heard. Hereat Valentine grew exceeding ioyfull, first, for that he should now vnderstand that which he long desired to know: Secondly, that the Lady vsed him so graciously. Thus taking their way out of the hall, she brought them into that Chamber: being come vnto the doore thereof, and thinking nothing, they found the Chamber doore guarded on this manner: On the one side a grimme, fearefull

and

and vgly ſhapen Villayne, ſtrong, and crooked, armed with a club of yron vppon his neck. which offered to make reſiſtance. On the other ſide of the chamber doze ſtood a moſt fierce Lyon, theſe two continually kept the dooze that none could enter without the Ladies leaue, oz elſe fight both with the Villayne and Lyon Valentine perceiuing theſe two watchmen to make reſiſtance, demanded of the layze Clerimond the meaning hereof, who anſwered: Theſe two you ſee here, are ſet to keepe this dooze that none may enter, without fighting with them, and that diuers haue periſhed in their preſumption, and againe, the Lyon is of ſuch fierceneſſe, that ſhe will ſuffer none to paſſe, except the Sonne of a King, and to ſuch ſhe ſheweth her ſelfe very louing.

Lady (quath Valentine) happen what will, yet I meane to try my fortune with the Lyon, and by maine ſtrength caught him about the body, wherein the Lyon fauſooke him, and let him paſſe. Orſon likewiſe aſſayled the Villaine, and ere he could be ready to lift vp his club of yron, he tooke him by the middle ſo ſtrongly, that he threw him againſt the wall, tooke away his club, and gaue him ſuch a blow, that he tumbled him on the ground, and had it not been for the Lady Clerimond, hee had ſlaine him in that place. Being both thus vanquiſhed the gate was opened, and they entred the chamber wherin they might ſee all the world could afford, as Gold, Azure, rubies, Saphirs, with great multitudes of pretious ſtones, within this Chamber was foure Pillars of Jaſper, maruellous rich; of which two of them are as yellow as moſt fine Gold: a third greene, more greene then graſſe: a fourth more redder then a flame of fire. Betweene theſe pillars was a pretious ſtone called an Amery, more rich then the heart of man can deuiſe; in midſt of which ſtood a head of braſſe, ſet vpon a rich pillar. Valentine wondring at the riches of theſe obiects, fixed his eyes onely vpon the Head, longing to heare what it would publiquely open concerning his birth. At length, when euery voice was ſilent, the Head began to ſpeake after this manner: Thou famous Knight of royall parentage, thou art called *Valentine* the valiant, of whom it may iuſtly be ſayd there was neuer the like appeared before mee. Thou art the man, who of right ought to marry with the

Lady

Lady Clerimond, thou art ſonne to the Emperour of Greece, and thy mothers name is Bellyſant, ſiſter to Pepin king of France, who by wrong ſuggeſtions hath been banished her Country & husbands bed. Know this, thy mother is in Portugall, in the caſtle of Ferragus, who hath had the keeping of her theſe twenty yeares. Pepin is thy uncle, and the wilde man which hath euer accompanied thee is thy naturall Brother: you two were deliuered by the Empreſſe Bellyſant, in the Foreſt of Orleance, and being brought forth, thy companion was taken away by a rauenous Beare, and by her hee was nouriſhed in that wood amongſt the reſt of her whelpes, and neuer ſucked he any other: for thy part Valentine, thou waſt found the very ſame day in that Foreſt by king Pepin, who hath nouriſhed thee tenderly, and brought thee vp to mans eſtate: Further, thus much I ſhall alſo tell thee, that this thy brother here preſent, ſhal never haue vſe of his tongue till a thread be cut vnder the ſame, and then thou ſhalt heare him ſpeake plainely. Therefore proceed as thou haſt begun, and thou ſhalt proſper: for my time is at a period, ſith thou art come to enter this Chamber, and ſo bending it ſelfe towards him in token of reuerence, it neuer after ſpake more.

Valentine marking well all that the head had uttered, fell vpon the boſome of his brother *Orſon*, and *Orſon* on his, and with kind embraces they counter-changed each other. The Lady ſeeing all this began thus to breake out into ſpeeches, alas courteous knight, I of all other ought moſt to ioy at this your happy arriuall, for by you am I freed of a ten yeares heartes griefe, which I haue hardly vndergone herefore. Againe, by this brazen head I vnderſtand that you euer haue been the Man on whom my affections ſhould reſt, and whereunto I gently agree, (if ſo you pleaſe) and take you for my wedded Lord.

Lady (quoth Valentine) I accept you as my Wife, who was giuen to mee by my Brother the greene knight, that was vanquiſhed by my brother *Orſon* before the City of Aquitaine, onely this I ſhall requeſt, that as your brother the green knight hath forſook Mahomet, ſo you would do the like. Sir (quoth ſhe) I ſhall gladly pleaſure you in any thing you ſhall command me, and be obedient to your will in euery point, whilſt you and I ſhall liue. And ſo great.

great joy beſyded all the Inhabitants of this caſtle, for they were right glad of the Tydynge that the Brazen head had declared vnto them. After this, the reputation of *Valentine* increaſed more and more, but all their former joy and gladnes was ſuddenly eclipſed by the treachery of her brother Ferragus, as hereafter ſhall be more fully declared.

Chap. XXXI.

How the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that paſt betweene his ſiſter and *Valentine*, by the meanes of one *Pacolet* a Dwarfe, and an Enchanter.

NOw ſhall you vnderſtand, that within this caſtle where Clerimond was, dwelt a dwarfe (named Pacolet) which the Lady had nouriſhed and brought vp of a Childe, beſtowing much coſt to haue him taught in Schooles. This Pacolet, being of more age then ſtature, grew exceeding witty and at laſt he ſtudied the black art, and therin grew ſo famous in Negromancy, that by enchantment he had compoſed a little horſe made of wood: in the head of which horſe he had ſo artificially conveyed a pin of wood, that euery time he mounted on his back to ride abroad, hee could turne that pin toward the place he would go vnto, and ſuddenly hee would be in the ſame place without danger, for the Horſe could run through the Ayre more ſwift then any bird. This Pacolet being in the Caſtle, obſerued the behauiour of Valentine, and when he had fit time, he addreſſt himſelfe for portugall, to beare newes to Ferragus, how all matters had paſſed at the caſtle. So he betook himſelfe to his wooden horſe, and in a moment of time (ſetting the pin for that part) he arriued there, according to his deſired wiſh, and related the ſtory vnto Ferragus. When Ferragus heard his tale, he grew exceeding angry againſt Valentine, for that he ſhould haue his ſiſter in marriage: alſo he grew enraged at her, that ſhe would grant her loue vnto him (being a chriſtian knight) ſwearing by his gods, to take reuenge vpon them both: but all this while he diſſembled vnto pacolet, bidding him return, and beare this meſſage to Clerimond,

that

that the knight Valentine, who ſhall haue her to wife, is right welcome, and that ere long I will come in perſon to bidde them, accompanied with a gallant troupe of Gentlemen, and then ſhall their nuptiall be royally ſolemnized: ſo Pacolet tooke leaue and got him to his Horſe, and was in an inſtant come home againe. Being come, he preſently went into the preſence of the Lady Clerimond, and ſayd vnto her; Madam, I haue beene in Portugall with your brother Ferragus, who is glad of your choice with Valentine, and promiſeth ere long to bee here in perſon, and to make vp a royall marriage. At this tale the Lady ſtood amazed, and at laſt began to anſwer him thus: Ah Pacolet, is this true that thou haſt ſaid? Aye me, the gods defend my Brother from plotting any Treaſon againſt mee, for I am well aſſured he could neuer abide a knight of France, nor any other that is a Chriſtian; I am right angry that thou didſt not acquaint me with thy departure, for I had ſerious buſineſſe for thee to do, which was to haue enquired there for a woman-chriſtian, one that of long time hath had her abiding with my brother Ferragus, in the Caſtle that he now holdeth.

CHAP. XXXII.

How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious journey into *Portugall* to ſee the Lady *Bellyſant Valentines* Mother, and of his returning backe, and the newes that hee brought.

THe Lady hauing ended her talke, Pacolet made her this anſwer. Lady, ſeeing you are ſo earneſt, I ſhall for your ſake make another journey into Portugall, and before to morrow mid day I ſhall bring you tydings whether ſhe be there or no. Valentine hearing him ſay ſo replyed; that canſt thou not do except the diuell be in thee: The Lady Clerimond ſayd vnto Valentine, let him alone, for by Art hee hath promiſed, that he will ride more then a thouſand miles a day. Hereat Valentine marueiled much, and calling *Orſon* vnto him, he cut the thred from vnder his tongue that hindred his ſpeech, which being done, he ſpake preſently, where he related the ſtory of his life both in the Foreſt, which held them the moſt part of that euening.

On

On the morrow according as Pacolet had promiſed, he was found in the Hall before Valentine, ſaying unto him on this manner; Sir I am returned from Portugall, and have ſeen your mother in good health: Friend (quoth Valentine) thou art welcome, for it is thee I onely deſire to heare of. Loue (quoth Clerimond) be not too haſty, for if my brother come not hither, we will goe into Portugall to him, and then we ſhall both haue our hearts deſire. Nay ſurely (quoth Pacolet) your brother will come hither: I (quoth the Lady) but I ſtand in feare of him, leaſt that he worke ſome treaſon againſt vs. For this laſt night I dreamed a fearefull dreame, at which I was very much affrighted, and thus it was: I dreamt I was in a great water, in the which I ſhould have periſhed, had it not been for a great face that drew mee out thereof. Being out, me thought I ſaw a Griffon iſſue out of a cloud, who with his talons tooke mee vp, and carried mee I know not whether. Loue

(quoth

(quoth Valentine) giue no reſpect at all to dreames, for they be but deluſions of a melancholy minde. Tis true (quoth ſhee) but they trouble me euery night. Hauing ended this diſcourſe, they entred into a faire Arbor, garniſhed with great variety of Flowers, repoſing themſelues ſome few houres in long dalliance; where weele leaue them, and you ſhall heare that the ſame day arriued Ferragus the Traitor at the Caſtle of Clerimond.

The Lady hearing of his comming, preſently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her, and ſayd vnto her; Siſter aboue all creatures liuing I haue moſt deſired to ſee you, tell mee I pray you, which is the knight you meane to make your husband. This faire brother is the man, whereupon Valentine ſaluted him in great reuerence. Ferragus ſayd thus vnto him; faire knight, ye be welcome into theſe quarters, for the loue of my ſiſter Clerimond. For ſeeing it is ſo fallen out that you haue conquered my brother the green knight, and ſent him into France, cauſing him to be chriſtened, euen ſo haue I a great deſire to be baptized, to become a Chriſtian and follow your Religion.

Valentine believed all theſe words which he had ſpoken, but vnder theſe faire promiſes hee ſmothered treaſon, yet at the laſt Valentine began thus to ſay vnto him: Sir, it is reported to mee, that within your Caſtle for the ſpace of theſe twenty yeares, you haue maintained a chriſtian woman who is mother vnto mee, whom I would gladly ſee; her name is Bellyſant, ſiſter to Pepin King of France, and wife vnto the Emperour of Greece. By Mahomet, ſayd Ferragus you ſay truth, and to the end your eyes may behold her, you ſhall go along with me into Portugall, ſo ſhall you rightly be informed whether ſhee be the Lady you ſeeke for, or no? Eramercy (quoth Valentine) and ſo Ferragus left him, and ſayd vnto his ſiſter Clerimond after this manner; Siſter my ſoules ioy, I deſire your aduancement more then any thing on the earth, and am glad you haue found out ſo worthy and valyant a Knight for your eſpouſall; wherefore to knit vp all at once my deſire is, that you would go with mee into Portugall, and there with the conſent & applauſe of all my Nobles, we intend highly to ſolemnize your Nuptiall day.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Valentine and Orſon were betrayed by the treachery of Ferragus, and how he committed them to priſon, with their woefull lamentations.

FErragus having thus gotten their good wils to depart for Portugall, put all his ſhips in a readines, and packing vp all their prouiſion, they put forth to Sea. Being now at Sea: Ferragus fell from all his former words of comfort, and began to plot the death of Valentine and Orſon. In the dead time of the night, when the two brethren were at reſt in their Cabins, he cauſed them ſecretly to be taken forth of their beds, and committed them to bands, muſling their eyes alſo that they could not ſee: Naw, when Clerimond ſaw what was done vnto her loue, ſhe fell into an extreame agony, and with watry teares began thus to vent her lamentations. Alas deare Valentine, our ioyes are ſuddenly turned vnto ſorrow: thou haſt bought my loue at too deare a rate, when thou art not only thus miſ-vſed, but euen in danger of thy life: Curſed be the day of my birth, for with much danger haſt thou purchaſed my loue. Alas, alas, what ſhall I doe? Rent heart, weepe forth my eyes, when ſuch a valiant hardy and moſt magnanimious knight muſt thus be tortured for my ſake? Thou haſt deceiued the truſt I put in thee, by working ſo fowle an act againſt my loue: Thou haſt robbed me of all ioy, and brought vpon me an vntimely death. Further, know this, that if you put to death theſe two knights you carry to your graue the name of a villaine. Let them alone their death will worke you ſmal content: or if there be no remedy, ſpare them, and ſeize firſt vpon me, and caſt me into the ſea, for I would not liue to ſee two ſuch innocents falſly put to death without deſert: Yea, euen ſomuch was the lady perplexed, that with very hearts ſorrow ſhe would haue ſlaine her ſelfe, or elſe violently haue leaped ouer-boord into the Sea.

Ferragus perceiuing her in this deſperate fit, gaue ſtrict command that ſhee ſhould bee well attended by ſome of his his Barons, and eſpecially that ſhee ſhould not ſo much as ſpeake a word

woꝛd with either of the pꝛiſoners, and leaning her to her laments, the Chꝛiſtians both *Valentine* and *Orſon* faſt in bands. *Valentine* perceiuing himſelfe thus betrayed, began thus to bemone his hard hap: Alas quoth he, how contrarily hath foꝛtune dealt with mee? I haue ſpent all my youth in trauell and danger, onely to finde out the parents that begot mee? and ſee, euen now when hope had well-nie ſet end to all my ſoꝛꝛow, I am vnhappily fallen into the hands of mine enemies, that onely ſeeke my death. Alas bꝛother *Orſon*, how ſuddenly are all our ioyes blaſted and our mirth tuꝛned into mourning. On this wiſe complayned Valentine and *Or*ſon, but all this while are they on their way towards Portugall, and ſhoꝛtly after aꝛriued at the Caſtle of Ferragus. Being there aꝛriued, tydings was bꝛought vnto the Lady Bellyſant, that two Chꝛiſtian knights were come along with them as pꝛiſoners: at which newes ſhe quickly left her Chamber, and came to haue a ſight of them. When ſhe was come neere vnto them, and had well reuiewed them, at laſt ſhe ſayd thus vnto them. Children (quoth ſhe) of what Country be you, and where were you bꝛoꝛne? Lady (quoth Valentine) we be of France, and bꝛoꝛne not farre from Paris Ferragus perceiuing the Lady to ſpeake vnto them, ſharpely rebuked her, ſaying: Lady, leaue your queſtioning, foꝛ except they renounce their faith, they ſhall miſerably end their dayes in pꝛiſon: and herewithall called vnto him a Iayleꝛ, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be there kept onely with bꝛead and water. This miſery was not ſufficient, but moꝛe then that, certayne churliſh *Sarazins* ſtanding by, ſmote theſe two Children with their fiſts and ſtaues.

After Ferragus had committed them, hee gat him vp into his Pallace, and called foꝛth his Siſter Clerimond vnto him, when ſhe came beſoꝛe him, ſhe could not foꝛbeare teares, which made him thus to ſay vnto hoꝛ: Siſter, leaue weeping, foꝛ I ſweare by Mahomet, you haue too long doted vpon the Bꝛazen head as well appeareth in that you make your chaple with one of a contrary religion: but change your mind, foꝛ it is a ſhame that you ſhould firſt take him to Husband that hath been the ouerthꝛow of Our Bꝛother the Green Knight, next a Chꝛiſtian

whom our lawesdoe abhorre. Forbeare (I ſay therefore) and bee ruled by my direction, and I will raiſe your Fortunes, by matching you vnto that puiſſant King Trompart. Forget, I ſay, theſe two French-men, for ſhortly thou ſhalt ſee, I will make them ſhorter by the head. Brother (quoth *Clerimond*) it behoueth me to obey you, for I plainly ſee I muſt let go the thing I cannot haue: for, whereas force conſtrayneth, feare hath little power, and neceſſity often preuenteth truth. Theſe diſcourſes finiſhed, *Ferragus* departed with his Queen and other attendants, and entring the great Hall, with very much honour and reuerence they receiued the Lady Clerimond, the Queen thus ſaying vnto her: Siſter, welcome, for I haue long deſired to haue a ſight of you. Lady (quoth Clerimond) I giue you millions of thankes, but know this, that I am right heauy and ſad for two Chriſtian Knights that are come hither vnder colour of friendſhip and loue, brought ouer by my Brother faire promiſes, and now to be violently handled, as to bee throwne into a Dungeon, and alſo threatned to death: This ſiſter euen this, wounds my ſoule, and ſplitteth my very heart in ſunder. Alas Siſter, pitty me, for one of theſe Knights ſhould be my Husband, amongſt all men liuing hee is the comlyeſt, valianteſt, and hardieſt knight that liues vpon the face of the earth. Againe (deare Siſter) by force of armes hath he conquered his foe, and woone my loue, wherefore Lady pitty my diſtreſſed eſtate, and let me ſee that chriſtian lady which you haue ſo long kept within this Caſtle. Siſter (ſaid the Queen) I ſhall gladly conſent to your deſire herein, and ſo bringing them together, the Lady Bellyſant ſayd thus vnto her: Lady what is your will with me, ſpeake on, for I would gladly heare any thing you haue to ſay: Then thus, I bring you joyfull tydings, and yet the end of my tale will be as ſorrowfull as the beginning is joyfull: Know this, I am not ignorant of your eſtate and dignity: for you are Siſter to Pepin king of *France*, and Wife vnto the Emperour of *Greece*, who wrongfully baniſhed you his Country. Soone after your exile, you were in your trauell deliuered of two faire Sons in a Forreſt, one of which was taken from you by a Beare, and the other you loſt you know not how. All this is truth. Now Ladie, your Children are both aliue,

and

and I can tell you wher to find them. At theſe wordes Bellyſant fell into a ſwound for joy, but *Clerimond* quickly recouered her againe, and then the Lady ſaid vnto her: Faire Damoſell, how came all theſe things to thy vnderſtanding? Then Clerimond related the whole ſtory, how Ferragus her brother by ſubtlety and Treaſon had put them into a dungeon. Bellyſant hearing her two Children were impriſoned by Ferragus, made great lamentation, inſomuch that the Wife of *Ferragus* entred the hal, to vnderſtand the cauſe of theſe mournefull clamours. *Clerimond* told the Queen all from point to point: Well (ſaid the Queen) be appeaſed, and diſſemble the cauſe from the king, for if he haue any knowledge hereof it will make him rather ſo much the worſe then better affected, either to them or you.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How *Pacolet* the Dwarfe comforted the two Ladies.

AS theſe three Ladies were conferring about this matter, into the chamber came Pacolet, the Dwarfe, that was new come from his wooden Horſe. When Clerimond ſaw him, ſhee wept bitterly, and ſaid. Alas *Pacolet*, what injury haue I done vnto thee, that thou ſhouldſt thus rob me of all my ioyes at once, for I am well aſſured, that thou mightſt haue giuen me warning of all theſe miſeries. Lady (quoth Pacolet) be not ſo highly diſpleaſed at me, for I proteſt, I am ignorant of all that hath betided you: but ſeeing that he hath begun theſe bitter bickerings, I ſweare my Art ſhall vtterly forſake mee, but I will find a remedy for you to auenge your ſelfe: and to that purpoſe I here vow all my ſeruice vnto you and Valentine while life doth laſt. Friend (quoth the Lady Bellyſant) if thou canſt but free my two children out of priſon, I ſhall acknowledge my ſelfe highly indebted vnto thee, and I will recompence thy labours euery way. Lady (quoth Pacolet) no more take you no care, but comfort your ſelfe, and ere long you ſhall well perceiue my craftie worke to take ſuch effect by my Art, that you ſhall haue cauſe to remember me while I haue a day to liue.

CHAP. XXXV.

How by Art *Pacolet* set free *Valentine* and *Orson* from the prison of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and the faire *Clerimond*.

IT chanced upon a day that Ferragus made a great feast for all his Nobles; which day they passed in such revelling and mirth, that the night growing late, they all betooke themselues to rest. Being all at rest, Pacolet was still watchfull to giue the Ladies content, and comming to a great tower, whose gates were braue, and surely locked, by his enchantment the gates flew open, and hee entred therinto: Anon he came vnto the doore of the prison where the Ladies two Sons lay bound, and assoone as hee touched the doore, the locks brake, and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a darke dungion, and hearing the doore open, were greatly perplexed, for they looked for nothing but present death: and at last Valentine began to weepe, but Orson said vnto him; Make courage Brother, for it behoueth vs to prepare for death, and sith it is so, for that first entreth here to lay hold vpon me, shall dearely pay for his aduenture: with that he layd hold vpon a great yron barre that lay there by; but at last Pacolet spake vnto them saying; Lords, feare me not, for I come to set you free from forth this dungeon; wherfore make no noyse, but softly follow me; and before the morrow Sunne I shall bring you both vnto your Mother: Valentine at this speech reioyced greatly, but Orson beholding him with an austeere looke, would not giue any credite to his words. Pacolet at the fierce looke of Orson was much afraide, insomuch that he gane backe, but by the words of Valentine hee was much recomforted, and Orsons fury abated.

After this, Pacolet led them vnto the chamber wherein these two sorrowfull Ladies sate in mournefull teares. When he came vnto the doore of the chamber, it was fast locked, but he did easily open it. After they entred in, Pacolet by wrought with his Charmes, that all that were thereabouts fell into a heauy and dead sleepe, and

and knew nothing of their comming. Being in the Chamber where as the two heavy Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but ſhe ſuddenly fell in a ſwound, ſpeaking unto them never a word: But the Lady *Clarimond* pitifully ſayd thus unto Valentine: Alas (faire knight) this is the Mother that bore you, who for the love and joy of you, is fallen into this grievous extaſie. Then Valentine embraced her, and tooke her up in his armes, and *Orſon* alſo clapped her about the middle, ſaying unto her: ſweet mother, ſpeake unto me. and then he kiſſed her tender lip, but all this while ſhe ſpake never a word, but at laſt they all three fell flat upon the earth into a ſwound, and there lay panting for breath a long ſeaſon, while the faire Lady Clarimond ſtood over them bewailing this ſtrange accident. At laſt comming to themſelves againe, the Mother ſayd unto them, weeping: Alas, my Children, for your ſakes have I ſuffered more paine and anguiſh then ever poore woman was able to undergo, and you two the onely cauſe of theſe my dolorous paſſions, but ſith the gods have ſo ordained that I may once ſee you and embrace you before my death, all my griefes are vaniſhed, and become no burthen unto me. But tell me, how have you been preſerved ever ſince your birth? and in what Countrey? and with whom have you remained? for it would glad me to heare the event thereof. At laſt (the having ended her words) Valentine began the pitifull ſtory of all their miſeries, even to that preſent houre. Valentine having finiſhed his ſad tale, by which the Empreſſe *Bellyſant* clearely knew that they were both his naturall Children, wayling with many more teares then before, ſhe would faine againe have fallen into a ſwound, but Pacolet prevented her, who was at that inſtant in the chamber, ſaid unto her Lady, leave theſe lamenta, and let us thinke how we may depart from *Portugall*, and ſo rid us out of the ſubiection of K. Ferragus. Alas, ſaid Clerimond, my love, remember the oath that you made unto me, to take me for your wife. Deare Lady (quoth *Valentine*) what I have promiſed I will performe: but at this preſent the love I owe unto this my Mother, toucheth me neere the heart.

These words of Valentines being ended, Orſon ſayd unto Pocolet, goe open me the chamber doore of Ferragus, and with

theſe hands I ſhall worke his finall downefall and overthrow. Pacolet anſwered: come, go along with me, and I ſhall gladly open it, to fulfill this your deſire: but know this, if you murther him, you ſhall looſe the loue of my Brother the Green knight, who may diuers and ſundry wayes do vs pleaſure. Ladie (quoth *Valentine*) you ſay troth, and I agree vnto this your wiſe and diſcreet motion, for I would not haue you guilty of ſuch a crime, as the death of this your brother, for to gaine the world.

At this very houre they departed the City and Pacolet opened the gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Ports of of the Sea, where he had appointed for them a Ship ready rigged, and hauing a faire guſt of wind, they ſpeedily arriued at the Caſtle of *Clerimond*, whether being once come, they refreſhed themſelues with pleaſures.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How *Valentine* and *Orſon* eſcaped the Caſtle of *Ferragus* and ſayled with the two Ladies into *Aquitaine*.

VAlentine being come and ſafely arriued at this caſtle of Clerimond, could not ſo content himſelfe therewith, but ſtill grew more and more doubtfull of Ferragus, fearing leaſt he ſhould follow them, and put them into freſh dangers. Therefore, to preuent all occaſion of further miſchiefe, hee gat him down vnto one of the Ports, cauſing the Marriners there preſent, to victuall their ſhip afreſh, and alſo to prouide good ſtore of Munition, to bee in a readineſſe vpon all occaſions. Hauing thus done, hee returned againe vnto the Caſtle without any ſuſpition: being come, at laſt he began thus vnto his Mother Bellſant, and the Lady Clerimond, ſaying: that hee would ſuddenly depart for Greece towards Conſtantinople, to ſee his Father the Emperour who without all iuſt cauſe had baniſhed his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with *Orſon* and Pacolet.

The

The next day they tooke shipping and went on their voyage, and at breake of day, the Jaylor according to his accustomed manner went to the tower to visite the prisoners, and to beare them their allowance of bread and water. Comming vnto the gates, he found them all open, and the prisoners gone, he suddenly returned to the king, and said vnto him. Dread king, mercy: for this night I haue lost the two christian knights that you had deliuered to prison. He had no sooner done speaking, but another messenger appeared, and said: O king a greater mischiefe then this is likewise happened this night, for the christian woman whom you haue kept so many yeares, is this night escaped away, and haue carried along with her your Sister Clerimond. Ferragus vnderstanding these harsh tydings, all enraged begun to teare his haire, that hee was as a mad man amongst his Barons, and suddenly causing them to be armed, he made them to pursue and follow them, so he betaking himselfe to his club, ysued out the formost.

He was a mighty gyant, who was in stature about thirteene foote in height. Being out of the towne, hee called his men about him, went forward to follow them that were escaped, letting none passe he met withall, but he demanded tydings of them, yet he could not heare of them: for Pacolet by his Art was too subtle for Ferragus. At last being tyred with pursute, he swore that hee would besiege the Castle of Clerimond, for he did thinke assuredly to find her there, but all in vaine, for they had been there, but they were departed before his comming. Thus enraged, he swore by Mahomet, that he would either find Clerimond and all her company, or else he would shake all christendome, and so departed the castle.

Chap. XXXVII.

How king *Ferragus* assembled all his men of warre, to take reuenge upon *Valentine* and his sister *Clerimond*, and how he followed them into *Aquitaine*.

When Ferragus had long laboured, and could heare no tydings of the christians and his sister Clerimond, he was much grieued, and in his fury sent all his men of war an euery side,

preſently to aſſemble themſelues to take ſea, and follow Valentine, to try if they could find him, and to bring him backe againe. But when they had ſpent many daies and effected nothing, they returned euery man to his home, and reſted from their fruitleſſe toyle. Whileſt Ferragus and his Lords were thus trowling the flowing ſeas, Valentine & Orſon were entred the city of Aquitaine: being there, they diſſembled their eſtate, and as priuate perſons lodged in the houſe of a Burgeſſe of the towne: Valentine would gladly haue gone into the Pallace of the Duke of Savary, but Orſon therunto would not agree. for he hauing a farther reach of policy, ſaid thus vnto him: Brother, I find by my ſmall experience, that women are variable and vnconſtant, therefore hearken to my aduiſe, let vs onely ſee an ſrie how the Lady Fezon ſtandeth affected towards me, and herein we ſhall try her conſtancy. Brother (quoth Valentine) I ſhall willingly agree hereunto: then Orſon took vpon him the habit of a knight Errant, and entred the great hall, taking Pacolet the dwarfe for his Page. When he was come before the Duke, he ſaluted him with all reuerence. The Duke obſerning well his behauiour, tooke it to bee Orſon that thus had demeaned himſelfe: but after finding by his ſpeech he was likely to be deceiued he ſayd: Great Duke, I am a knight Errant, and one who would gladly aduenture to do you ſeruice, in any manner you will employ mee. Knight, quoth the Duke, I accept your proffered ſeruice, and will giue you ſallarie enough to content you, inſomuch that if you will not depart my ſeruice before I giue leaue, I ſhall giue you ſuch riches, as all the ſtocke you came from could neuer raiſe. Thanks (great Duke quoth Orſon) for your liberall heart, and I heare how ere I depart, to deſerue your loue & liberty.

Hereupon the Duke requeſted him to viſite his Court, and in lieu of his good will he allowed him in preſent pay one hundred and fifty pounds, making him withall a companion for the Court. Orſon thus preferred by the Duke behaued himſelfe worthy his preferment, and euer ſo carried himſelfe at meat, that euery man delighted in his company. Amongſt the reſt the faire Lady Fezon, that was ſworne his wife grew wondrous heauy and ſad, but ſhee knew not why, for ſhe knew not that it was Orſon whom ſhe had beheld,

beheld, and thus paſſed forth the dinner time. Dinner being done, *Orſon* tooke his leaue for that time, and returned to his lodging, where his mother and the Lady Clerimond had taken vp their reſidence. Orſon being come vnto the place where the Ladies lay, he related vnto them the whole paſſage betweene him and the Duke: which when they heard, they much reioyced thereat: But this ioy laſted not long, for there came ſudden newes that Ferragus, had ſent meſſengers vnto the Duke of Aquitaine to proclaime open warres againſt him.

The Duke hearing theſe vnwelcome newes, preſently prouided both men and prouiſion to reſiſt ſo proud an enemy? Ferragus according to his promiſe, ſuddenly arriued before Aquitaine, euen in the very ſame place, whereas his brother the green knight had pitched pauillions, when that Orſon became his vanquiſher. By this meanes much hurt redounded vnto the country and prouinces thereabout, whereas the Sarazens armie lay in a readineſſe, thinking by this their long and tedious continuance, to ſubdue and ouer-run the whole Country before them.

Ferragus ſtill reſoluing vpon this imagination (mark what followed:) the worthy Duke of Aquitaine, being of a magnanimous courage, aſſembled all his men of warre, and being thus put in a readineſſe, they ſuddenly iſſued forth of the Towne, venturing to raiſe the ſiedge. Amongſt the reſt Valentine and Orſon made their appearance, being alſo accompanied with little Paceler, but theſe three were not knowne vnto any at that time, where wee will leaue them a little, to heare what followeth.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the Duke of *Aquitain* was taken priſoner in the batell by *Ferragus*, and how *Orſon* let him free by the helpe of *Paceler*.

THe Duke of Aquitaine calling to minde the huge armie of the Sarazens that lay before the City, valiantly reſolued to giue them preſent Battell the next morrow: ſo calling vp all his forces, and placing them in readineſſe, there happened a bloudy battell before the City of Aquitain, and

and many a braue leader on both parts, there left their life. The Gyant Ferragus himſelfe was amongſt the thickeſt, gathering himſelfe as neere as hee could vnto his Standard-bearer. The chiefe men ſlaine in this battell, were fiue valiant knights, that is to ſay, Baudumain, Bondry, William, Galeram, Anthony the good Marſhall, and Gloriam the hardie: all neere about the Duke of Aquitaine, and they that had the chiefe command throughout his Campe. This happening, the Chriſtians were forced to fall back, whereby the duke himſelfe was begirt with enemies, ſo that none might come to ſuccour him, yet in the midſt of all theſe daungers, he bare himſelfe moſt valiant, and ſtill cried *Aquitaine, Aquitain*, my noble hearts fight on for Aquitain, but in the end all little auailed, for Ferragus hauing once gotten a ſight of him, came neere, and at laſt tooke him priſoner and led him to his pauillion. Ferragus hauing thus beſtowed the duke, came vp againe to the battell, which ſtroke ſuch an amazement into the hearts of the Chriſtians, that they would haue forſaken the field, eſpecially becauſe they had loſt the duke their Lord and Maſter. Valentine and *Orſon* ſeeing them thus to wauer came vp with all the ſpeed they could, and cried vnto them with a loud voice: Valiant knights and men of Aquitaine, ſhew your ſelues men, run not away in time of extreamitie, for if you doe lamentable will bee your reproach: bee hardy and courageous once againe and let vs trie the fortune of the day.

Theſe two knights hauing thus done ſpeaking, the people began afreſh to gather vp their ſcattered forces, and turned their faces once more vpon the *Sarazens* with a double courage. By this time tydings was brought into the Citty, that the duke was taken priſoner, at which ill newes the Lady Fezon lamented more then all the reſt, ſaying, with a heauie heart ſhedding teares, Alas my father, now is your life in hazard, for from the hands of theſe Sarazens, there is no hope of any mercie. Farewell ſweet Father (quoth ſhee) I ſhall neuer hereafter ſee you againe, but ſhall bee here left as a deſolate Orphant. Alas Orſon my loue, thy long and tedious ſaying abroad doth much diſtemper mee, for if thou wert here preſent, there would be ſome hope to gaine my Fathers freedome.

Valentine

Valentine all this while is amongſt the thickeſt, hewing forth his way with his ſword. Orſon on the other ſide was not idle, for hee had taken an oath, that either he would free the duke from captiuity, or leaue his body amongſt the reſt. Pacolet the magitian and dwarfe promiſed *Orſon* aid and aſſiſtance at need, and thus all buſied, and nigh hand wearied, *Orſon* put ſpurs to his horſe, and ran violently through the battell, and eſcaped. Orſon and Pacolet being paſt danger, hurled away their owne ſhields, and hanged about their necks the ſhields of the Sarazens, ſet forth with the image of Mahomet in them, and by this ſubtlety they paſſed cleane through the Campe of the Pagans (for Pacolet could ſpeake their language right well.) Now are they come vnto the Pauillion of Ferragus, where the duke lay in bands, thinking to haue releaſed him: But Pacolet perceiuing the number of his Gaurd to bee to mighty for them, he ſuddenly caſt them all by his charmes into a deadly ſleep. Being thus made faſt, came vnto the duke, and ſaid vnto him, come with vs, and preſently mount this horſe, for wee are come to ſet you free from the power of *Ferragus*, if ye doubt what I am, I am that knight which in your hall demaunded wages of you, and you allowed me liberally. Stand no longer to queſtion me, neither feare the power of all the Pagans here aſſembled, for I ſhall ſurely bee your guide through the wicked rout. Knight (quoth the duke) you are a welcome man to my diſtreſſed bands, and therefore for your dangerous enterprize in working my deliuerance, I ſhall giue you my faire daughter Fezon in marriage.

Indeed (I muſt confeſſe) I had giuen her not long ſince to a Knight, but hee was wilde and ſauage, and he neuer had the vſe of his tongue: but by reaſon of his long abſence, I feare hee hath woone ſome other Ladie, and left my Daughter Husbandleſſe: but to bee ſhort, take her for this thy noble act, and with her, I freely giue the halfe of my Dukedome. Thanke (quoth the knight) ſuch a gift is not to bee refuſed: but let that paſſe, and let vs make ready for our eſcape, that wee may returne vnto your diſcomfited forces. Hauing thus ſaid, they all three took their way backe againe through the camp of the enemy, without diſturbance. All this time was Valentine in the army, demaunding what was become of his

Brother.

Brother *Orson*, but when he found no man that could tell him tydings of him, he grew wondrous heavy and sad, fearing least hee had been slaine in the conflict of the battell.

Thus passed Valentine from place to place to find out his Brother *Orson*, and with a resolute mind rushed afresh into the battell, and as a man distract, he laid so forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to stand against him. *Ferragus* espying him so valiant, came up close to him, and having gotten him once in chase, never left him until he had slaine his horse under him.

Valentine having thus lost his Horse, Ferragus seized on him as his prisoner, causing him to be bound hand and foot, taking an Oath by Mahomet, that he should not escape from death, though there were not a man more to bee had throughout the whole Land, but this his oath was broken, for as he was leading his prisoner *Valentine* fast bound along the field, *Orson*, *Pacolet*, and the D. of *Aquitaine*, set upon him, *Orson* crying out, let him not escape us, and therewithall put spurs to his horse, and ran so fiercely against the Pagan *Ferragus*, that both he and *Valentine* his prisoner fell to the earth. The Giant *Ferragus* quickly regained his feet, and left *Valentine*, who fearing began to run away. *Orson* espying him cryed out, brother returne againe and feare nothing. Herevpon *Valentine* gaue eare vnto him, and so happning vpon a fresh horse, *Valentine* was new mounted. When the christians saw the D. againe at liberty, their courages encreased, their forces doubled and with joy of heart they cryed out aloud, Long live D. *Aquitaine*. This sudden noise much amazed the *Sarazens*, insomuch that *Ferragus* was glad for to flee, and raise his siege. When the men of *Aquitaine* heard the retrait, they recouered themselues againe into the City. The battell being thus ended, *Valentine* and *Pacolet* returned to their lodgings, but *Orson* went along with the D. to his Pallace: whether being come, he called before him all his Nobles, and his Daughter *Fezon*, being all assembled he called *Orson* vnto him demanding of him his Name; sir quoth hee I am called *Gregory*, then sayd the Duke thus before them all, Lords I giue you to vnderstand that aboue all men living I am most beholding vnto this Knight, both for my life and liberty.

And

And as for you daughter Fezon, it is my pleaſure that aboue all men you accept this knight for your Husband: Daughter you haue good cauſe to loue him well, for by him am I made a liuing father vnto you.

The Nobles there aſſembled, agreed willingly hereunto, affirming that ſhe could do no leſſe than ſubmit to her Fathers will, and the rather conſidering the dangers that by him had been preuented. *Orſon* hearing all this, ſtill concealed himſelfe, till he had further aſſayed the conſtancy of the Lady *Fezon*: acquainting his brother *Valentine* what he purpoſed to do, as enſueth in this next Chapter.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How *Orſon* tryed the conſtancy of the Lady *Fezon*, before he marryed her.

ORſon hauing a deſire to try the conſtancy of *Fezon*, at laſt replyed thus vnto the Duke: Sir for the honour you haue vouchſafed me, I reſt euer thankefull for the ſame, but for your daughter it were moſt requiſite, that I ſhould ſee how ſhe ſtands affected towards me: and likewiſe fit for her to make choiſe of ſuch a man as is of equall birth with hers, and therefore pleaſe it you, let her anſwer for her ſelfe. With theſe words he entred into the chamber of faire Fezon, and ſitting down by her, he took her by the hand and ſaid vnto her: Lady, your beauty hath ſo entangled my heart, that without your fauour and loue, I am as an vnfortunate man: your father is willing that I ſhall enioy you, if you ſay ſo alſo, then may I luſtily vaunt that I haue wan the fairеſt Lady liuing, and will proue a conſtant knight whileſt I haue breath. If you conſent to this let vs embrace each other. (Knight quoth the Lady) you ought to forbeare, for all your labour is loſt: it is true I loue all knights, yea and all good men too, in the rule of Honor: but as for him whom I mean to make my husband, him will I neuer change, nor yet forget. Why, but fayre Lady (quoth Orſon) that which your Royall Father hath prouided for you, ought to pleaſe you: (ſayd ſhee) it is reaſon that I obey my Father, but if ſo be my Father.

Father will conſtraine mee to breake my faith, and forſake him that vanquiſhed the greene knight, I will rather leaue my Father, then once offer to breake my faith. Lady (quoth Orſon) I wonder how you can ſet your affection on ſuch a man, for he is of a wilde nature and diſpoſition, beſides (as your father reporteth) is dumbe and cannot ſpeake a word. True (quoth the Lady) yet loue learneth me to loue him with a faithfull affection, to whom my faith is already fixed: and therefore ſtay your ſuite, for I will neuer alter nor change my minde from him.

Orſon hereat grew wondrous ioyfull to heare the wiſe anſwer of Fezon, and ſo tooke his leaue of her, and came againe to the duke, ſaying: Great Duke, I am returned from your daughter, for ſhe hath giuen me an vtter deniall, ſaying that ſhee will neuer haue other husband then he that conqured the Greene knight. Doth the Duke care not for her deniall, for ſhe ſhall not rule her owne will, but bee you a little patient, and this day will I talke with her my ſelfe. Thanks mighty Duke quoth he, I am much beholding vnto you, and ſo left the Court, and came to the lodging of his Brother Valentine, to whom hee related the whole manner of his proceedings with the Lady Fezon: Brother ſaid Valentine) you now know and find her faithfull, but let vs go together to the Pallace, for I am aſſured the Duke will giue mee good entertainement. Sir (ſaid Orſon) doe as you pleaſe. Valentine clad himſelfe in rich apparell, and Orſon put on nothing but the Jacket in which hee firſt entred into Aquitaine, and thus accompanied with Pacolet, they went towards the Pallace. And as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his Daughter in the preſence of his Nobles, ſaying thus vnto her, Daughter, what moueth you to neglect my command thus, in reiecting the knight, of whoſe loue I haue had ſufficient triall, for hee hath ſaued me aliue. Father (quoth the Maiden) I pray you to ſolicite mee no farther in this matter, ſeeing you know aſſuredly that I haue giuen my promiſe to him that vanquiſhed the Greene knight. What greater ſhame can there bee, than to breake my promiſe which I haue made already: If by you I am conſtrained, the danger light vpon you, onely let mee be innocent. As they were thus diſcourſing,

the

the Duke eſpied Valentine & *Orſon* comming towards him, whom he embraced, and honourably entreated. *Orſon* having ſainted the the Duke, paſſed towards the Lady Fezon, who receiued him with a ſmiling countenance, and ſaid thus vnto him: you are welcome aboue all others, your long abſence hath greatly grieued mee, and had you not come in now as you did, my Father had beſtowed me vpon another knight. Loue (quoth Orſon) I haue learned to ſpeak ſince I was with you laſt, and am the very ſame man that yeſterday courted you in your chamber, all which pleaſed the Lady exceedingly. So Orſon entred into a chamber, and put on rich apparell, being thus attyred, he entred the Hall. The Duke hearing of his comming, embraced him kindly, and ſaid: Son, pardon my rathneſſe in that I would haue giuen away thy loue to another, for I was fully perſwaded that thou wouldſt neuer haue returned. Sir (quoth *Orſon*) I forgiue you. Then the Duke demanded how, and where they had ſpent their time ſince their departure? Orſon told him their whole progreſſe, and what daungers they eſcaped, and withall how they two were the Sons of the Emperor of Conſtantinople, and Bellyſant ſiſter to king Pepin of France, whom they had lately found in Portugall. The duke hearing that their diſcent was of Royall blood was right glad thereat, and ſayd, Knights, you are worthy all honour by reaſon of your birth, but I am ſorry that your Father the Emperour, and your vncle king Pepin are ſo hardly beſieged by the Sarazens, and that vnleſſe ſpeedy aid be ſent vnto them, they will be forced to yeeld themſelues. Valentine giuing good eare vnto this relation, grew exceeding ſad, but Pacolet at laſt put him ſomewhat out of his dumps and ſaid: leaue off your ſorrowing, for ere to morrow night, I ſhall ſend you to Conſtantinople, but (quoth Valentine) it muſt then be by the deuils meanes. Sir (ſayd Pacolet) mount you vpon my wooden Horſe, and trie the euent that will follow after. Valentine anſwered that will I doe, for I deſire nothing ſo much as the ſight of my Father, whom I neuer ſaw. Valentine on the morrow prepared for to depart: But before his departure, the Duke married his daughter vnto *Orſon*, in the preſence of the Lady Bellyſant, and the Lady *Clerimond*, with the conſent of the nobles who were at the wedding,

where

where there was great triumphs, and in this aſſembly there was a ſpie who obſerued all the proceedings, and gaue intelligence thereof vnto Ferragus. When Ferragus had receiued theſe tydings, hee vow ed by Mahomet to bee reuenged on them all, but eſpecially on Pacolet for ſtealing away his ſiſter Clerimond, whom he ſo much loued, and had ranked her amongſt the Chriſtians.

CHAP. XL.

How *Ferragus* the Gyant, ſtrengthened his forces by the ayde of King *Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimaine*.

FErragus being out of hope to get reuenge on the two knights and his ſiſter Clerimond, calling vnto him a meſſenger, and deliuered to him diuers Letters of State, eſpecially one of them was to king Trompart, of whom he deſired ayde againſt his enemies, all which, if he would ſpeedily accompliſh, he would giue vnto him for his wife, his ſiſter Clerimond. At the farwell of his Letter, he deſired him to bring along with him the Enchanter Adrimaine. Here leaue we the Gyant, and returne to Valentine, who by this time is taking his leaue for Conſtantinople. But in the end he ſaid thus vnto the Duke and Orſon his brother; Lords with you I leaue my louely Clerimond. Valentine (quoth the D.) take you no thought for her, for I ſhall haue a fatherly eye ouer her, as well as I haue ouer my daughter Fezon.

Valentine hauing taken leaue, at laſt came to *C*lerimond, who loth to part with him wept bitterly, whereby he was forced to leaue her, and turning him to his brother, Orſon ſayd thus, brother commend me to my father the Emperor, and to my vncle king Pepin, and tell them ere long I will viſite them. Brother (quoth Valentine) I ſhall remember you, and ſo departed. Orſon ſtill remained in the Pallace, but Valentine had a duty yet more to doe, namely to take his leaue of his mother; but when ſhe ſaw him, ſhee claſpt him round with her armes, but not able to ſpeake: Valentine perceiuing her naturall affection, recomforted her in the beſt manner he could, but all was in vaine.

CHAP.

Chap. XLI.

Of the pitifull tale the Empreſſe made to *Valentine* her Sonne before his farewell to *Conſtantinople*. And what ſpeeches paſſed between him, his father, and his Vnckle.

VAlentine being ouercome with the lamentations of his Mother, at laſt ſayd thus vnto her. O Mother leaue off, bee not ſo carefull for mee, for if I eſcape danger, I ſhall gladly ſee you here againe, in the meane ſpace take care of my faire Clarimond, and let her be aſſured of my loyalty towards her. Alas my Sonne, now will it come to light, that I haue been baſely abuſed, and falſly banithed my husbands Bed and Country, but yet do thus much for mee, commend mee to the Emperour, as alſo to thy vnckle king Pepin, and ſay vnto them in my behalfe, that I am an innocent Lady. Moreouer, if there be ſuch a man breathing that will once but open his mouth to the contrary, fight thou for mee, and iuſtly maintaine my vnſpotted chaſtity. Mother (quoth Valentine) all this and more I ſhal perform, and ere many months haue run their courſe, I ſhall cauſe my Father to receiue you againe, and aſke you pardon for his raſh proceeding. So now he takes his laſt farewell of his deare Mother, with this charge, that ſo ſoone as he was arriued, hee ſhould ſend Pacolet, to bring tydings of all that happened.

Now taketh hee his way to the lodging of Pacolet, whither being come, Pacolet made readie his Wooden Horſe, and mounting Valentine behinde him, turned the pin the ſame way he would take, and ſuddenly they were mounted into the Ayre ſo ſwiftly, that ere the morrow at noone, they were in ſight of Conſtantinople. Valentine was wondrous ioyfull, that hee was ſo neere the place hee ſo much deſired to ſee, and by the helpe of Pacolet the inchaunter, came that night euen to the great Hall, where the Emperour accompanied with King Pepin ſate both at ſupper. Valentine being come into ſuch an vnknowne preſence, grew very baſhfull: but the Greene Knight ſitting at the Table with the Emperour and King Pepin, eſpied Valentine and knew him, ſo did

King Pepin take knowledge of him likewiſe, ſaying thus vnto the Emperor: Great Emperour, behold here one of your owne bloud, a valiant knight, and your owne naturall Sonne. The Emperor hearing this, was much amazed, and riſing from his table, made towards him and kiſſed him. The green knight was the firſt that tooke him in his armes and embraced him, then king Pepin next, and laſtly the Emperour his Father, who was greatly aſhamed at his fowle fact in baniſhing his vnſpotted and guiltleſſe wife.

It chanced ſo likewiſe, that in this preſence was her old ſeruant Blandimain, who well obſerued Pacolet euer ſince hee ſaw him in Portugall, and at laſt he went vnto him, demanding how it fared with his old Lady and miſtris, the Lady Bellyſant: Pacolet ſatiſfied him in all his demands, ſo that exceeding great ioy and gladneſſe was heard about the City for the loue of Valentine, and people came from all parts to behold the Emperours Son the valiant knight. Valentine ſeeing ſuch continuall recourſe of all eſtates gathering about him, he ſayd vnto them, Lords, knights and barons here aſſembled, who ſeeme well pleaſed to behold my perſon, I cannot yeeld no other recompence vnto you but thanks, and eſpecially vnto my vncle king Pepin, who hath euer ſoſtered me euen from my cradle, and had it not beene for him, I had periſhed, by reaſon of a ſharp edict publiſhed by my Father, who by the falſe ſuggeſtion of a dead traytor, baniſhed my mother from his bed & country: Wherefore to cleare her innocency, I (as her naturall Son) offer my body in combat againſt any falſe traitor whatſoeuer.

CHAP. XLII.

How *Valentine* and the greene knight were taken priſoners in the battell of *Conſtantinople*, by the Soldan *Moradin* and his men.

When the Emperour perceiued his Sonne to bee ſo much moued for the diſhonour which was done to his Mother the Empreſſe, he wept for very griefe of heart, and ſayd thus vnto his Sonne. Alas my Son, I haue no doubt of thee to be my ſon neither of thy manhood in offering to reuenge her wrongs

vpon

vpon the traitor that accuſed her but he is fallen already by the ſword of a Marchant, in the preſence of thy vncle Pepin my ſelfe, and diuers others of high ſtate. At his death, he confeſſed the whole Treaſon wrought againſt her, and ſince that time I haue ſent diuers and ſundry Meſſengers, into all nations, to heare tydings what is become of her, but all in vaine, for I cannot obtaine my deſired wish: therefore I pray thee if thou canſt tell me ſome glad tydings of her. Father (quoth Valentine) I know ſomewhat, for yeſternight, I both ſaw her and ſpak with her in Aquitain, telling him beſides, that Pacolet the Enchanter had ſuddenly brought him hither by Art, rather then good ſpeed. The Emperour hearing ſuch gladſome newes from his Son, cauſed great triumphs throughout the City of Conſtantinople. When the Sarazens heard ſuch ſhouts and reuellings within the City, they were greatly amazed, and euery one put himſelfe in readineſſe. The Souldan, round begirt Conſtantinople, famiſhing vp all the Inhabitants moſt lamentable to behold. At laſt theſe tydings came vnto the eares of Valentine and the green knight, who arming themſelues, came into the City, and ſayd: Lords, you well perceiue the extremitie in which we are, be yet courageous and ſtand to it, and there is hope of recouery: wherefore follow my counſell, iſſue forth ſome number of you to forrage for ſome victualls, whil'ſt I accompanied with 2000 men, ſet vpon the Sarrazens: they did as he aduiſed them, and within ſhort time they behaued themſelues ſo valiantly, that they gained from the enemy 300 Chariots laden with all ſorts of victuals. Hauing thus ſeized the Victuall, they were conducting the ſame into the Citty, but the Souldan ſore vexed at theſe his loſſes, got betweene the Citty and them, thinking to haue defeated them from entrance, but king Pepin eſpying their policy, and how they had ſtopped vp the paſſages, preſently couched his ſpeare, and ran vpon the Souldan ſo violently that he bare the proud pagan to the earth: then pulling forth his ſword, he ſmote at one Arcillon (a very valiant commander) with ſuch fury that he ſtroke him out of his ſadle. Valentine and the greene knight perceiuing the great courage of king Pepin, and what fortune he had in the field at that preſent, entred freſhly into the Battell, and with a reſolute courage euen

in the preſence of the Souldan, he hewed downe the chiefe ſtandard of the Sarazens. The Standard being ouerthrowne, Valentine addreſſed him againſt the Soldan himſelfe, and with his ſpeare he ſo encountred him, that hee ſo toyled him, as he could ſcarcely ſit his horſe. Moroldas one of the chiefe commanders was ſlaine, and his Admirall taken priſoner by the Greene knight, with other exploits performed on both parts. But marke what followed, theſe two knights were ſo triumphant in their vncertaine victory, that they preſſed the enemy ſo farre within danger, that when they would returne they could not, and ſo conſequently were taken priſoners by the Sarazens, and brought before the Souldan.

The Souldan hauing gotten them in bands, inſulted proudly ouer them, and with an Oath hee vowed to his Mahomet, that they ſhould neuer eſcape with life, but gaue preſent Commaundement

to

to raiſe vp a Gibbet before the City walles, and preſently in the ſight of all his enemies to hang them vp. Now were Valentine & the Greene knight in a great feare: but we will leaue them a little, and returne to thoſe Chriſtians that had gotten great booty of victuals, yet could not get into the City there withall, by reaſon that they were encountred by the Sarazens Army. In which encounter the Chriſtians were ſo hard be ſet, that they were doubtfull what ſhould be the end of that daies bickering. And at laſt, they eſpying what deſperate caſe they ſtood in, with one conſent yſſued forth men women, children, Prieſts clarkes, and all degrees. When the Pagans ſaw their multitudes, they were forced to retire themſelues into their Tents, and by that meanes the Chriſtians obtained all their prey of victuals, and ſafely conueyed it into the City, although with the loſſe of many a life. The Emperour was exceeding heauy for the loſſe of his warlike men, eſpecially for his Sonne Valentine and the Greene knight, ſo heauy and ſad alſo was the worthy King Pepin. Pacolet ſeeing theſe two Peeres take the matter ſo heauily, recomforted them againe, ſaying on this manner: Lords, leaue off your lamentations, for it ſhall fare better with Valentine and the Greene knight then you can imagine. Friend (ſaid the Emperour) if thy words proue true I will aduance thy ſtate. Sir (ſayd he) ſhortly you ſhall make triall of my loue and reſpect towards you ſo he betooke him to his wooden Horſe, and departed towards the Soudans hoaſt, and came thither juſt at the inſtant that the Soudan came to iudge Valentine and the Greene knight to death: but how it was preuented, you ſhall heare in the Chapter following.

CHAP. XLIII.

How *Pacolet* by inchantment delinered *Valentine* and the green Knight out of the bondage of the Souldan, and how *Pacolet* cozened the Soldan, when he had him upon his Horſe, and in ſtead of carrying him into *Portugall*, brought him into *Conſtantinople*, where he was hanged.

All being aſſembled as afore ſaid, the Souldan began thus to ſpeake: Lords, here I preſent before you, theſe that moſt encomber the mighty Gyant *Ferragus*, and that which moſt you ought to reſpect, is, that one of them hath forſaken his Religion, and for that cauſe, my judgment is, that he be ſent to Ferragus and from him receiue puniſhment fitting his offence. Nay and the other Sarazens, let vs neuer do ſo, but let them both here after death to morrow morne. Lords (quoth the Soldan) be it ſo. Theſe reſolutions thus agreed vpon, the Soldan entred his Pauilion to ſupper, where being ſet, Pacolet came and ſaluted him in the name of Mahomet. Pacolet (quoth the Souldan) thou art welcome, how fareth Ferragus my deere friend? ſir (ſaid Pacolet) right wel, and by me ſends gladſome tydings, if you pleaſe to heare them. Right gladly, (ſayd the Soldan) I prethe begin, then pacolet drew him aſide out of the hearing of his attendants, and ſayd, Sir know this, I am lately come out of Portugall, and ſent by the faire wife of Ferragus, whoſe heart is on fire with the loue ſhe beareth you: Long hath ſhe concealed theſe her affections, but hauing no power longer to keep cloſe the cloſet of her breaſt, ſhe hath committed to me her loue, her truſt, and what ſhe dares not vtter to any ſaue to my ſelfe. Againe, Ferragus is in Aquitain, ſo that no opportunity would be omitted. Therefore come along with me and ſtay no longer to expoſtulate, for vpon my horſe we will ſuddenly arriue in Portugall, and bring you to the faire Ladies ſight. Pacolet thou haſt more gladded my heart, then all worldly treaſure can afford: true it is, ſhe is the only woman liuing that ener I aymed at, but neuer knew I how to effect my wiſhes. The Soldan couſed pacolet

colet to be highly feaſted, ſo on the morrow they went on towards their iourney, but marke what followed: Valentine and the greene knight you muſt conceiue were both in the Pauillion, and were right glad that they had gotten a ſight of Pacolet, but durſt not make any ſhew thereof: and pacolet on the other ſide, ſhewed himſelfe a flatterer vnto the Souldan, in eating, drinking, and reuelling at the Souldans table, and in beholding the priſoners, ſayd thus vnto the Souldan, in the hearing of all. Sir how dare you venter your noble perſon ſo neere to this Greene knight, and not rather giue him his deſert, for of all men liuing he is moſt dangerous, firſt, for the wrongs that he committed againſt his Brother Ferragus, bereauing him of his ſiſter Clerimond, and giuing her in marriage to a Chriſtian knight next he hath renounced his Mahomet: Theſe things conſidered, it is fit that he ſhould dy, were there no more men liuing. Friend (quoth the Soldan) to morrow morning they ſhall both be hanged: then the Souldan commanded the priſoners to be ſtrongly guarded vpon paine of death, and ſo withdrawing him to his chamber, left Valentine and the Green knight vnder the conduct of thoſe that moſt deſired their deaths.

In the dead time of the night came Pacolet vnto Valentine and the Green knight, and firſt freed them of their bands, and by art ſo charmed all the Warders (who ſlept ſecurely) that he brought them paſt all danger. Hauing thus ſet them at liberty about the dawning of the day he came to the Souldans tent, crying out ſo loud to him that he awaked him, and then Pacolet began thus to ſay vnto him: Sir, little appeareth your loue vnto the Wife of Ferragus, ſeeing for her ſake you are loth to breake ons houres ſleepe: whereunto the Souldan replyed, thou haſt done well to awaken me, for I was euen now in a moſt fearefull dreame, and thus it was: My thought a Crow did beare me ſwiftly through the ayre, and as ſhe was flying away with me, another great Bird met me, and ſtroke at me with his bill ſo hard, that the bloud forthwith ſtued out abundance: now this dreame maketh me much to feare, that *Ferragus* hath ſome intelligence of my deſires, and meanes to reuenge himſelfe vppon me. Away ſir (quoth pacolet) with this childiſh feare, will you therefore neglect the loue of ſuch a beauteous

Lady: By Mahomet (quoth the Soldan) thou sayest truth, and calling his Chamberlain to make him ready, gaue him this charge, Sirra, be secret, if thy Uncle *Bryan* aske for me, tell him I am gone a little way to disport with *Pacolet*. Then *Pacolet* tooke the Soudan behind him vpon his wooden horse, and turning the pin, the horse rose vp into the ayre so swiftly, that in a little space they were come to *Constantinople*, euen to the Emperors Pallace. The Soldan perceiuing *pacolets* horse to make a stay, said thus vnto him: Friend, are we at our journey end? Yea, and feare nothing, for we are now in *portugall*, in the pallace of King *Ferragus*. By Mahomet (sayd the Soldan) the Diuell hath borne vs thither very quickly. Well (said *pacolet*) enter you into the great Hal of this Pallace, and in the meane space will I hast me to the Chamber of the Lady, and presently cause you to be brought vnto her bed: do so, quoth the Soudan, for I am euen well-neere rauished with ioy, and shall thinke each minute an houre, till I haue my desire.

Now sitteth the Soldan in the Hall, attending the comming backe of *pacolet*, while he in the meane space maketh toward the chamber wherein the Emperor lay: being come to the doore, hee gaue a great blow against it, insomuch, as the Chamberlaine asked who it was that thus presumed to disturbe the Emperors rest: Friend (quoth *pacolet*) feare not, for I am *pacolet*, newly come from the Soudans host, where I haue set at liberty both *Valentine* and the Green Knight, who were condemned to die. Besides, say vnto the Emperor, that I haue brought along with me the Soudan himselfe, who is at this present within this Pallace, and thinke th himselfe to be in *portugall*: Wherefore, he may now be reuenged on him at full, for he hath most iustly deserued death. The Chamberlaine told the Emperor all these tydings, and K. Pepin also: so arming themselues, they came into the Hall, where the Soudan sate: the Soudan perceiuing himselfe betrayed, cryed out with a loud voice: Thou false Pacolet Traitor to my person, I vow to be reuenged vpon thee for this disloyall practise towards mee, and therewithall drew forth his sword, and like a mad man ran vp and down the Hall, striking the very Roues so fiercely, that he made the fire to fly from those

fence-

ſenceleſſe wals. As he was in this madding fit, the Attendants entred towards him with Torches. The Souldan eſpying them, defended himſelfe ſo fiercely, that he ſlew the Squior that attended on King Pepin: this act of his fired the courage of the king, that he made a blow at him, and felled him to the earth. Being ſaine they bound him hand and foot, and in the morning came in *Valentine* and the Greene Knight, who finding the Souldan there in bands, was very joyfull.

The Emperor and the King ſeeing *Valentine*, were joyfull for his deliverance, giuing great thanks to Pacolet for his care ouer his ſon: and withall ſayd, Pacolet, one ſtraine more of thy Horſe muſt I demaund, you ſhall ſit (quoth *pacolet*) and if you will get vp behind me, I ſhall inſtantly tranſport you into hell. But Lords, let that paſſe, and returne vnto the death of the Souldan, for if he eſcape your hands at this time, a world of miſeries will follow: ſo that very houre they proceeded to Iudgment, and commanded him to be hanged on the greateſt Tower of the Pallace, euen in the very ſight of all his Pagan hoaſt.

This done, the Pagans ſtood as men confounded, and amazed to ſee him there hanging, and wondred how he came within the city, but at the laſt, Bryan his vncle told them how he had been deceiued by that Traytor Pacolet. After they had long lamented the death of the Souldan, they gathered themſelues to Counſell, and in his ſtead choſe his Vncle Bryant Souldan. After all theſe things done, *Pacolet* tooke his leaue of the Emperor, and returned into *Aquitain*, to comfort the Lady *Clerimond*, as hee promiſed: but before his departure *Valentine* came vnto him, and ſayd; *pacolet* at your comming into *Aquitain* ſalute from me my mother Bellyſant, and my louing Lady Clerimond, my brother *Orſon*, and the good Duke of Aquitaine, with the reſt of the nobles, and aboue all the reſt deliuer this vnto my mother, by which ſhe ſhall vnderſtand our whole proceedings here. Sir ſayd pacolet, all this ſhall I willingly performe. So taking his Horſe, hee leapt vpon him, and hee flew vp into the ayre as ſwift as ſmoake.

The next morning Pacolet was come to his iourneyes end, and finding the Duke of Aquitaine, the Empreſſe Bellyſant, Orſon, &

Cle-

Clerimond, all in ſafety, he ſaluted them all, and deliuered them Letters: The Lady Bellyſant called her Secretary, to read the Letter, who ſayd, Lady, your ſon Valentine greeteth you well, ſhewing you that the Emperour would gladly ſee you, confeſſing his raſh credit giuen to a Traytor about your baniſhment, who hath requited it with the loſſe of his life; wherefore, he promiſeth, that ſo ſoone as he can free his Country from the incurſions of the Sarazins to come himſelfe in perſon, and then forthwith bring with him the green knight, whom *Orſon* vanquiſhed. The Lady hearing theſe ioyfull tydings, ſuddenly fell into a ſwound: but *Orſon* perceiued it, ſuddenly ſnatched her vp into his armes, and being ſomewhat come vnto her ſelfe, ſhe ſayd: My Child, I am iuſtly ouercome with ioy, in that I vnderſtand I am proued an Innocent of ſuch abhominable crimes as I was falſely accuſed of: but I long to ſee the Emperor, whom if I might but once againe behold, I ſhould not longer deſire to liue, for I am well enough reuenged, and my accuſer hath iuſtly ſatisfied a moſt ſhamefull death for his treachery.

Chap. XLIIII.

How King *Trompart* came before *Aquitaine*, to ſuccour *Ferragus*, and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*. And how the K. of *Inde* cauſed K. *Tromparts* head to be ſtricken off: and how he would haue married with *Clerimond*, and how *Pacolet* was reuenged on *Adrimaine*, in the ſhape of a woman. And how *Ferragus* was ſlaine; and how *Orſon* and the Duke went with an army to *Conſtantinople* to ſuccour the Emperour: and how *Orſon* led along with him his Mother. And how all the Pagans were ſlaine before *Conſtantinople*, and how the Emperor receiued his Son *Orſon*, & his wife *Bellyſant* with great ioy.

PAcolet being arriued in Aquitain, at the ſame time that K. *Trompart* came thither to ayd Ferragus againſt the Chriſtians. At whoſe comming Ferragus began thus to ſalute him: Famous K. of your comming I am glad, hopeing by your aſſiſtance to get back my ſiſter Clerimond, and to be

be reuenged on all thoſe that haue defamed her. Ferragus (ſaid B. Trompart) doubt nothing, for I haue brought with me Adrimaine the Enchanter, whoſe skill ſhall confound Pacolet in his own Art. Thankes gentle B. I am much bound to your loue, and if he can but giue Pacolet into my hands, I ſhall reward him liberally. Sir (quoth *Adrimain*) put your truſt in me, and ſo I take my leaue, and ſo betook him to his Magick Art. Being prouided of al things, amongſt the reſt, he laded himſelfe with victuals, and took his way towards *Aquitaine*: comming thither, he craued entrance at the gates to ſell his victualls, which was eaſily granted. After he had all, he went into the Pallace, where he chanced vpon Pacolet, whom Pacolet knew well. *Adrimain* (quoth pacolet, you are welcome, from whence came you and what is your Errand? Then ſayd *Adrimain*, you know, that long I ſerued B. *Trompart*, yet by fate I am fallen into a great miſchance, for one in his Court hauing ſmitten me becauſe I would not teach him the principles of my Art, I drew forth my knife, and killed him. Now fearing death, I am expelled the Court, and for this cauſe I fled towards you for ſuccour, and will proue vnto you a faithfull ſeruant ſo you be pleaſed to accept of me. *Adrymain* ſayd Pacolet, I am content, let it be ſo, make thee good cheere, and be merry. As they were thus in their cups, *Adrymain* ſaw the faire Clerimond paſſe through the Hall, who preſently demanded what Lady it was? Then ſayd pacolet, it is the ſiſter of *Ferragus*, who muſt be married to a right valiant knight. Whileſt they were thus in conference, came Orſon vnto them, and ſaid Gentlemen, I could gladly wiſh, that out of your Art, you would ſhew ſomewhat to delight this aſſembly.

At whoſe words, *Adrimain* drew vp a Cup aboue a Pillar, in ſuch wiſe that through the place (ſeemingly to all the company) ran a Riuer, furniſhed with all ſore of Fiſh little and great. When the beholders ſaw the water to come ſo ſtrongly againſt them, they were afraid of drowning. Pacolet beholding this feat amongſt the reſt, began a ſong, and in that ſong a Charme, that it ſeemed to all the beholders, that a great Hart ran through that Riuer, ouerturning al things that ſtood in his way. After this hart ran hunters with their hounds. This made many of the beholders leape af-

ter

ter, thinking to haue taken the Hare: but pacolet by his Art made the Hart ſuddenly to vaniſh. This ſport (quoth Orſon) was very well performed, and ſo the company breaking vp, Pacolet led Adrimaine to his Chamber to lie with him, but it proued fatall, for toward midnight, Adrimaine ſo enchanted all within the court, and with them Pacolet, that he had time to worke all that hee deſired. Afterward he went toward the Horſe of pacolet, and getting him, came into the chamber of Clerimond, and by Art cauſed her to riſe and make her ready, and letting her on the horſe behind him came vnto a window, turned the pinne, and ſuddenly hee arriued in the tent of King Trompart. Being come thither, he cryed out aloud, ſaying, Great King, ſleepe not, but haſte you hither, and you ſhall ſee the pleaſant Lady Clerimond, whom I haue ſtollen from Aquitaine, and with her pacolets horſe. Now ſayd the king I well perceiue thy loue: is this the Siſter of Ferragus? yea ſaid Adrimaine, and I haue alſo ſtollen her away, and alſo betraied pacolet my fellow Magitian, for he ſhall neuer be maiſter of his horſe againe. I but ſayd the King, art thou acquainted with the manner of his horſe? O, long ſince worthy king, and by vertue of the pinne how to gouerne him. Hauing thus made this knowne vnto King Trompart, hee thought to make experience of the horſe himſelfe, and taking the Lady Clerimond behind him, would tranſport her into his owne Countrey, and there marry her.

Hee being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his armes (for all this while ſhe was not awaked out of her enchanted ſleep) and ſet her on the horſe of wood. All this Adrimaine was eye witneſſe of, and ſayd thus vnto him: My Lord, if you faile any iot of the true vſe of the horſe, both your ſelfe and the Lady are in very great danger. Feare not that quoth Trompart, and ſo turning the pin he mounted ſwiftly into the ayre, and before next morning he was 200. miles on his way, but not at his iourneys end, for now awaked the Lady Clerimond out of her owne enchanted ſleepe, who ſeeing her ſelfe ſo deluded, fell ſuddenly into a ſwoond, this chaunce ſtroke to the heart of king Trompart, for hee was afraid leaſt ſhee had beene dead, and ſo turning the pinne, he hopped the horſe in a faire greene field by a fountaine, then taking the Lady

from

from the horſe he laid her on the graſſe, and tooke a little water and caſt it on her face, and the Lady recouered, being recouered ſhe made ſuch grieuous lamentations, that king Trompart was wel-nigh out of his wits: within this place there was a shepheard of whom king Trompart required ſomewhat to eat, which he gaue vnto the Lady, who eat thereof and was refreſhed: at laſt beeing come againe vnto her ſpeech, ſhe weeping vttered theſe words: Vnhappy I aboue all creatures, for I haue loſt my joy by accurſed treaſon. Alas Valentine my loue, curſed be he thee hath ſeperated vs. Trompart hearing her ſo clamorous, reproued her roundly, ſaying: Lady leaue off theſe foolish words of the chriſtian boy, or I will ſeperate thy head from thy body: is it not better for thee to be my wife, that am ſole Lord of all this juriſdiction, than to haue a beggerly ſtart vp, that hath neither land nor liuing. And with theſe words, he would haue killed her, but the Lady diſdayning him, bit him with her fiſt vpon the mouth.

This ſtrange and vnlookt for diſdaineſulnes, put king Trompart into ſuch an anger, that he in a furious rage caught her vp, and ſet her vpon the horſe againe, and turning the pinne the contrary way, preſently inſtead of carrying her into his owne Country, he lighted in Inde, in the midſt of a market place, kept there that day: the People ſeeing ſuch a ſtrange ſight, marvelled much thereat. The Lady Clerimond by this time knew the horſe to be Pacolets, and ſaid: Now am I falſly betraied, and Pacolet robbed of his horſe, but my deere Valentine he it is that moſt ſticketh at my heart, for now ſhall I neuer ſee thee more. Trompart (who thought for all this that hee had beene in his own Country) ſtill beating down her pitteous laments, with bitter words. But marke what followed, tydings was brought vnto the king of Inde, of what had hapned, who commanded them to brought before him. But this fell out ill for K. Trompart, for the king of *Inde* knew him well.

King *Trompart* being come before the K. of *Inde*, he bad him welcome, for you are he that hath put my brother to death: wherefore I will be reuenged on thee, and ſo cauſe his head to be ſtricken off. After, the Lady was led into the Kings Pallace, where hee ſate in his owne perſon, and he thus ſaid: Lady, I know now of whence

whence you are, by the bright ſplendour of your face, hath enthral-led my heart, wherefore if ſo you pleaſe to be my wife, I will make you Queene of all this ſpacious continent. Sir (quoth ſhee) you ſpeake graciouſly, but to take any man to Husband, I haue made a ſolemne vow to refraine during the ſpace of one whole yeare: wherefore pleaſeth it you to let my vow be accompliſhed, and that time being runne out, then will I willingly conſent thereto Well, ſaid the King, thy anſwere is reaſonable, let it be as thou haſt ſaid, perfourme thy vow, and remaine within my Pallace, and commanded that her attendance ſhould be as great as if ſhe had been his queen, allowed her a Chamber of ſtate, into which Chamber ſhee cauſed to be brought the wooden horſe that carryed her thither, and being there, ſhe placed it in the ſecreteſt place ſhe could deuiſe, and ſtill deſired ſhee might be freed out of that danger. Now leaue we her a while, and return to *Pacolet*, and look back alſo to *Aquitain*, and ſee the mourning that is made for the Lady *Clerimond*.

The night after *Adrimain* had betrayed *Pacolet*, great lamentations was made for the faire *Clerimond*, throughout the City of *Aquitain*: Moreouer, when *pacolet* found *Adrimain* abſent, hee doubted more, and looking round about the chamber wherein the Horſe ſtood, hee ſuddenly miſſed it, all this ſo falling out, *pacolet* fell into a moſt grieuous paſſion, inſomuch as had not *Orſon* at that inſtant come in, he would haue deſtroyed himſelfe.

pacolet being thus reſcued by *Orſon*, and beholding the generall ſorrow of the beauteous Lady *Clerimond*, he began thus to comfort them: Lords I will not giue ouer, till I am reuenged on that Traytor *Adrymain*, by whom we are all thus wronged. Herewithall he departed, and apparelled himſelfe like a gallant mayd, and took his way to the hoſt of *Ferragus*. Being come among the Army, many Pagans prayed her for her loue, but euermore *pacolet* excuſed himſelfe and ſayd, pardon mee I pray you, for I am promiſed already to the inchanter *Adrymayn*, and ſo they let her paſſe on. At laſt *pacolet* came to the Tent where *Adrymayn* was, at which *Adrymayn* ſtood amazed, and was ſo deeply ouercome in Loue, that, that night he retained him into his Chamber, but *pacolet* no whit to ſeeke off his ſhifts.

made

made ſomewhat ſqueamiſh, and ſaid: My Lord know this, I haue beene deſired of many, but I thinke fittеſt the worthieſt to be firſt ſerued: Daughter (quoth Adrimain) feare nothing, make good cheere, and be merry, for I haue a good ſtomacke to thee, and will vſe thee wel. Now he committed the maiden to one of his ſeruants to bee ſerued wit all the dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feaſted in the tent of Adrimain, while Adrimain is in the tent of *Ferragus*, pacolet demanded of the ſeruant of Adrimain what was become of king *Trompart*? The ſeruant ſaid, I thinke he returned againe into his owne Country, and caried along with him the Lady Clerimond vpo a horſe of wood, that my maiſter had giuen him: pacolet hearing this, was vered at the heart. By this time was Adrimain come vnto this Tent, ſaying to pacolet: Daughter is it time to go to reſt, ſee heere is the Bed wee meane to ſport in: your will be done ſayd pacolet. Then Adrimain put off his cloathes, and went into the bed, pacolet ſo inchanted him into ſo ſtrong a ſleep, that wake he could not till the morning. As hee dealt with Adrimain, ſo he did with all round about him, and putting off his womans attire, hee clad himſelfe in all the richeſt cloathes that *Adrimaine* had, and after with his owne ſword cut off his head, and bare it away with him. Hauing thus done, he takes his way towards the Tent of Ferragus, the which he found well guarded, and there by his Art, he alſo caſt them all into a heauy ſleepe. This done, hee entred into the tent of Ferragus, where he ſuddenly made him leape out of Bed, and cloath him: and tying him in his girdle, made him run by his ſide like a Spaniell, till he came euen to the very entrance of the gates of Aquitaine,

When pacolet was come to the gates of the Pallace, he found there the duke himſelfe, accompanied with many of his Barons, and eſpying pacolet they ſaid vnto him: where is Clerimond that you bring not her againe? He anſwered, Lords, patience a while, I cannot ſhew you all at once: know this, I am fully reuenged on *Adrimain*, for here I haue brought his head, and here is Ferragus, who by my Art I haue alſo ſurprized as you may ſee. Then ſayde *Orſon* you haue done very well. May Lords, more yet haue I to

ſay,

ſay which is, I haue enchanted a ſleepe the whole hoſt of Ferragus, therefore if euer you meane to haue a reſtleſſe victory, go now. What ſay you my Lords (quoth Orſon) mee thinkes Pacolet hath well aduiſed vs: therefore let vs go on, ſo they ſlaughtered all that lay before them, and put Ferragus into a moſt filthy darke, and loathſome priſon, vntill their returne.

After this great ſlaughter was ended, the duke returned againe into Aquitaine, and there commaunded to haue the gyant Ferragus brought before him, who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted ſleepe, vnto whom the Duke thus ſaid: *Ferragus*, if thou will here forſake thy Mahomet, and receiue baptiſme, then thou ſhalt liue: which if thou refuſe to do, thou ſhalt ſurely die. Know (ſaid *Ferragus*) I had rather ſuffer a thouſand deaths: ſo hee was ſuddenly beheaded. After his death *Orſon* tooke leaue of the Duke, and went towards Conſtantinople, to ayd his Father the Grecian Emperour and his Vncle *Pepin* king of *France*, againſt the vnbeleeuing *Sarazens* that had ſtrongly beſieged that City, but a little before his departing, the Duke ſaid thus to him: Worthy Knight ſith ye are reſolued to depart, I will go along with you, and beare you company. *Orſon* was very ioyfull to heare him ſay ſo, and gaue him thanks, ſo taking ſome ſmall time to ſet things in readineſſe, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy and valiant knight, who brought them on towards their iourney. But by the way, the Empreſſe *Bellyſant* much lamented the hard eſtate of her Lord, but *Orſon* pittying her, ſayd: Mother, leaue off your teares, and only ioy in that you haue been falſely accuſed, which now will much increaſe your honor: but I feare moſt our entrance into the City, which as I heare is much troubled with the *Sarazens*. Nay (ſayd pacolet) feare not that, for I will worke a deuice to enter, and my ſelfe will goe before and tell them ſo. Do ſo (ſaid *Orſon*) and tell Valentine the hard fortunes of *Clerimond*: Nay (quoth *Pacolet* not I, I will be no bearer of ſuch ſad tydings.

Now King *Pepin* and the Emperour being ſtrongly beſieged, were in great diſtreſſe for victuals within the City, and there was no way to be relieued, but by the ſword. Then *Valentine* knowing their great neceſſity, accompanied with the Greene Knight, and a wor-

worthy band of Souldiers, issued out of Constantinople, and charged upon 200 Chariots of Victualls of the Pagans, and returned the same with the death of all those that attended upon them. Having gotten this booty, they made their returne towards Constantinople, thinking to recouer the City, but they were begirt round about: on the one side with the Souldan, and on the other side with the king of Araby, and thirdly with a king called Alderon. Amongst these companies fell out a terrible bloody conflict, but Valentine in single fight killed the king of Dranaiger, and the Knight Clarion. The Greene Knight also behaued himselfe so valiantly, for at one blow he strooke off the shield Arme of the king of Morien, and before that slew his Brother. But all this valour little auayled, for in the end they were both taken prisoners and led before the Souldan: who hauing them in his possession, assembled fifteene Pagan knights to adiudge them to death. Valentine being thus in bonds, greatly lamented the wofull state of the Lady Clerimond, taking leaue both of his Father, Mother, Brother, and the rest, saying I must now forsake you all, and neuer againe behold your faces. The Greene knight seeing him so passionate: sayd, Let vs dye in a good cause, and welcome death.

Now was the Souldan set in his chaire of state, to proceed to Iudgement: in the meane space, in comes Pacolet in the midst of the throng, not knowne of any, and came & stood before the Iudgement seat, and kneeling downe sayd: Right deare sir, know I am a Messenger from your Brother Grodiart the great King of Argier, who for your succour hath brought along with him foure mighty kings, and by me requireth on which part of your army, they shall be ranged.

Againe, he prayes you, if you haue any Christian prisoners to send them him, and he will send them into his Country to draw the plough, and here stands a couple of fit instruments for that purpose. The Souldan reioyced at these tydings and commanded he should be feasted for that night: the mine time, Valentine & the greene knight were glad of Pacolets company. In the dead time of the night, Pacolet went vnto them, and giuing to each of them a bottle, vnbound them, and bad them follow him. Being out of the enimies reach,

Pacolet ſayd vnto them: Lords be comfortable, for in this land is aſſembled the Duke of Aquitain, and the knight Orſon, the Noble Empreſſe, and the Lady Fezon: I but ſaid Valentine, why commeth not the ſayre Clerimond? then anſwered Pacolet, ſhe would haue come, but being Sea-ſicke, ſhee was forced to returne againe to Aquitaine: So Valentine for that time queſtioned no further with him.

Then Pacolet adviſed them all to go into the City of Conſtantinople, and on the morrow, yſſue out thereof with a mighty Army vpon the Enemy. In the meane ſpace I will on the other ſide ſo beſtir my ſelfe, that the hoaſt of the Warlike Duke, ſhall come vp and giue a freſh aſſault. Now the Soudan perceiuing this, ſhal imagine it to be powers of his brother, the king of Argier.

Pacolet (ſayd Valentine) thou haſt well adviſed, and ſo it ſhall be effected. Thus they departed, Pacolet tooke his way to the Duke of Aquitain, who was yet on the Sea-ſhore, telling him that hee had been with the hoaſt of the Soldan, and how he had freed Valentine and the Green knight. Then Orſon anſwered, Pacolet there is yet ane thing more to be done, and this it is, that to morrow in the morning, we aſſayle the hoaſt of the Sarazens on the one ſide, and they of Conſtantinople on the other ſide, and ſo by that meanes we ſhall ouerthrow them quite. For all that come on your part, ſhall be thought to come to ayd the Sarazens. Then did the Duke draw vp his men in order, and ſo kept themſelues all that night.

The next morning the Emperor and K. Pepin diligently brought forth their men to the fight, and diuided their Hoaſt into fiue Battailes. The firſt was deliuered to Valentine: the ſecond to the green knight: the third to king Pepin: the fourth to Myllon Daugier: and the fift to Sampſon of Orleance, one that bare in his banner a Beare of ſilver. At the breake of day, the powers yſſued out of the City, to giue an aſſault vpon the enemy: being come into the field: they ſounded their Inſtruments, the noiſe thereof ſo affrighted the Sarazens that they ran out of their tents crying an allarum an allarum. This battell was extreame hot for the chriſtians that day, yet the enemy had no cauſe to boaſt. K. Pepin behaued himſelfe ſo valiantly, and cryed out to his ſouldiers, St. Dennis, St. Dennis. Then a

Sarazen

Sarazen cryed out vnto the Soldan to retire for the ſafeguard of their liues, for this night haue we loſt our two priſoners, and alſo there is comming againſt vs a new ſupply of a great army. Then the Soldan thought that he had been betraied: but yet he made forwards, and rowzed vp their courages doubly, inſomuch, as they inforced the chriſtians to fall backe: but little quayled their pride, for there came vpon them the Duke of Aquitain with his forces and aſſaulted them ſo fiercely, that they put to the ſword all that did come before them, and thus the Chriſtians conquered.

When the battell was ended, and the chriſtians had recouered vp their ſcattered forces, Valentine & *Orſon* came before the Emperor, doing vnto him dutifull reuerence. Father (quoth Valentine) here you may behold my Brother *Orſon*, whom as yet you neuer knew, then the Emperor embraced him with teares, and ſo did the worthy K. Pepin alſo. Faire Son (ſayd the Emperor) you are welcome, for by you my ioyes are doubled. Then aſſembled together the Emperor, King Pepin, Valentine and *Orſon*, the Green knight Blandimain and *Guydard* the Marchant, he that banquiſhed the falſe Arch-Prieſt. All theſe, with great triumph ſet out to viſit the tent of the noble Empreſſe Bellyſant, and the lady Fezon.

By this time they are come, when the Emperor ſaw his wife Bellyſant, he leapt off his horſe, and in teares and ſighes not being able to ſpeake, he embraced her: and Valentine and Orſon bare them company in their lamentations, ſo did alſo many of the reſt there aſſembled. At laſt words tooke place, and the Emperor recounted all the hard dealings that had proceeded againſt the Empreſſe, requiring pardon for what was paſt. My Lord (quoth ſhe) ſince it hath ſo pleaſed the fates to bring me vnto your ſight, I freely forgiue all wrong, but I long to ſee the man, that proued my innocency with his ſword. Loue (quoth the Emperor) this is hee by whom your honour was preſerued (Quoth the Lady) ſir, you ought to be regarded for your ſeruice to the Empire of *Greece* and K. of France. For which I make you my Chamberlaine, and giue you yearely a thouſand markes in gold. Lady I thank your bounty, and will attend you during life. Then (ſaid Valentine) Mother I pray tell me ſome tidings of *Clerimond*. Faire ſon, *Clerimond* hath been

stolne from *Aquitain*, and giuen to King *Trompart* that came to be Pagans aid. Valentine hearing this, looked strangely on Pacolet, thinking that he had deceiued him, and would haue smitten him: but Pacolee, intreated him to be patient, for an Enchanter hath stolne my horse away, but I am reuenged on him, by cutting off his head. Valentine vnderstanding these misfortunes, and that euery one was innocent, he grew into bitter passions for her losse.

Chap. XLV.

How King *Pepin* tooke leaue of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnyer* fainted, and left the knife in the bed. And accused *Orson* falsly of Treason, and how the knife was found in the kiugs bed. And how *Orson* claimed combat against his accusers, when they would haue adjudged him, and it was (by the twelue Peeres of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond* arriued in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end, he slew the dragon. And how *Valentine* after the conquest of the dragon caused the King of *Antioch* and all his land to be baptized, and of the lawlesse loue of the Queene *Rozamond*. And how the king of *Antioch* was put to death for renouncing his Mahometry, by *Brandiffer* his wiues Father: and how the Emperour of *Greece* and the Greene knight, were taken prisoners by *Brandiffer*.

These wars thus ended, K. Pepin took his leaue of the Emperor and returned into France, *Orson* would needs go along with his Vnckle Pepin and spend the remainder of his daies in his seruice. The king was content and said to him I will make you high Constable of France, moreouer if it so chance that my yong Son Charles should decease before me, I will make you King of France. I thanke you gracious vnckle, and you shall find me faithfull, and along with me will I beare the lady *Fezon*. The day of taking leaue came, and each embraced other with kisses and teares. But Valentine could not rest, for he had lost his loue: wherefore I am resolued to seeke my loue, for whom I endangered my life, and by my sword I wonne her,

her

her I bewayle, and her will I recouer againe if thee bee aliue: but if I find her not, ſhort and woefull will be my dayes, and ſo he called Pacolet to him, and ſayd: Wilt thou ſerue me and be my companion in this vnknown taske? Sir (quoth he) willingly, and am ready whenſoeuer you will ſet forward. Then *Valentine* made all things in readines for his departure, and now hath taken ſea, and left his Crowne and Country, onely accompanied with three attendants. Now leaue we him, and ſpeake of King Pepin, that by this time is ſeated in Paris, and was honourably receiued: but aboue all, the valiant *Orſon* was highly eſteemed, inſomuch that he had euen all the command of the kingdome deliuered ouer vnto him: If ought was to be brought before the King, Orſon was the man to be ſued vnto.

This greatnes of Orſon fretted Haufray and Henry, (of whom you haue heard before) to the heart, inſomuch as they plotted a meane how to take away his life, ſaying, it was much to their indignity, that Orſon ſhould be ſo preferred before them, being ſons vnto the king: ſurely ſayes the one vnto the other, his glory cannot long endure, for his owne pride will be his ouerthrow. I but ſayd *Haufray* vnderſtand me, we haue 2. Nephews, ſons vnto our eldeſt ſiſter, to wit: Florence and *Garnier* theſe are both hardy and fierce, and by them me thenks ſome plot might be ſet on foote: againe they are very fit members to execute any villany, for one is butler vnto the king, the other his Vſher vnto his priuate Chamber: now either of theſe may enter into the kings Chamber, and murther him in his bed, and ſuch a deed being done, it will ſurely be layd to *Orſons* charge, for he onely hath the guard of his perſon. If this can be effected *Orſon* will ſurely be condemned to death, and the Realme wholy light into our hands. In this it is neceſſary we vſe ſecrecie.

Vpon this reſolution they ſent for theſe two Inſtruments of murder, to acquaint them with the Treaſon, and being come, Haufray ſaid vnto them: Sirs, I and my Brother haue laid a plot to do vs good, and raiſe you to honour, which thing we chuſe rather to offer it vnto you, for that you are allyed vnto vs, and therefore we reſpect you before others. This it is, you know our Father the

King neuer loued vs, but hath euer aduanced ſtrangers, and left vs ſlightly regarded: theſe things conſidered, my Brother, I, and you two Brothers, deſcended from our Vncle, determine to put our doting Father to death, and ſo we may ſhare the land into our own gouernment. This thing by vs firſt plotted, were fitteſt to be executed by one of you, and I thinke you Garnier to be fitteſt for it, becauſe you being Vſher in the Kings Chamber, you may conuey your ſelfe behind ſome Arras, and when the king is in his bed, murder him. This being done, when it ſhall be known that the king is ſlaine, the fact will be layd vpon Orſon, for he onely hath the charge of his body, and ſo we ſhall quickly get him adiudged to Death: and as for little Charles we ſhall doe well enough to make him away. Vncle (ſayd Garnier) doubt not, but that I ſhall vndertake this enterprize. Shortly after, Garnier on a night when the King was at ſupper, got a knife and ſecretly entred into the kings chamber, and hid himſelfe behind the hangings. When the houre of the kings going to bed came, he was attended by his guard and Chamberlaine, as the manner was: the king being layd, euery man departed, ſaue only Orſon, who conferred with the king till he fell a ſleepe. Orſon ſeeing the King aſleepe, without making noyſe left him, and laid himſelfe down vpon a Pallat by him.

The dead time of the night was come, wherein Garnier aſſayed (hauing his knife ready) this bloody enterprize: but being come to the beds ſide, ready to lift his arme to ſtrike the fatall ſtroke, he thought the King would awaken, and ſo in trembling feare laid him downe by the bed ſide, and durſt not ſtir: Anon he would aduenture againe, but being (as before) poſſeſt with feare he put the knife within the bed: then he returned to the place from whence he came. Orſon all this while ſlept ſoundly, misdoubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightfull dreame, which was, that one would haue robbed his Wife of Honor: alſo, he thought, that beſide a Riuer, he ſaw two Herons, who fought with a Hawke, but the Hawke defended her ſelfe ſo valiantly, as he had ſlaine the two Herons, had they not been aſſiſted by a multitude of little birds, and the Herons likewiſe had ſlaine the Hawke, but that an Eagle reſcued him.

At

At this dreame *Orſon* awaked, and was much aſtonied thereat, ſaying: The Gods preſerue my Brother Valentine from treaſon. By this time the day broke, and *Orſon* ſoftly ſtole out of the chamber fearing to awaken the king. When *Garnier* ſaw Orſon gone, he alſo followed ſoone after, and tooke his way towards the chamber, where he found the two Brethren, who longed to heare the newes. *Garnier* (quoth they) tell vs what is done? Lords ſaid *Garnier*, I would not do the like againe for all the Gold in *France*, and yet I haue not hurt the king, for ſtill as I was lifting vp my hand to ſtrike, feare and horror did ſo affright me, that I durſt no more aduenture. But I haue aduiſed me of another plot, and haue of purpoſe left the knife in the kings bed, and this it is, we will accuſe Orſon of Treaſon, and tell the king there are foure traytors, whereof *Orſon* is the principall. Alſo they will make away little *Charles*, and ſo wholly poſſeſſe the Crowne. To proue this, we will ſay, that for this purpoſe Orſon hath conueyed a knife into the kings bed. If any demand how we knew thereof, we will ſay, one of vs ſtanding at the doore heard all their conference. Garnier (ſaid Haufray) you ſay well, but if *Orſon* deny it, you and your brother ſhall craue combate againſt him. Say, that by ſuch aduenture you come by the worſe, my brother and I ſhall find men enow to reſcue you. Thus they reſolued and thus was Treaſon the ſecond time laid for *Orſon* the Innocent. The next day the king being at dinner, attended by Haufray and *Henry*, who ſhewed good countenance to *Orſon*: and when Garnier ſaw his time, he came before the king, ſaying: worthy king, your grace hath beſtowed on me many kingly fauours, wherefore it is my duty to open vnto you a treaſon which lately I chanced to heare, and to the end you may haue a care vnto your perſon, I will bewray vnto you the practiſers thereof.

Garnier prayed to lay hands on *Orſon* firſt, for hee was the principall Traytor, the number in all are foure, but *Orſon* was the man ſhould kill you in your bed with a knife: and that your Maieſty may the better credit me, this day as they met together, I was in a certaine place, and heard *Orſon* ſay, the knife which you ſhould be killed with, was hid in your bed: now if it pleaſe you, either to goe or ſend, you ſhall find my words true. Sir (ſayd

Florent, my brother ſpeaketh nought but truth. The King hearing theſe words beheld Orſon with many ſtrange countenances, and at laſt ſayd: Falſe and diſloyall man can ſuch a thought enter into thy breſt, as to take away my life, whome I haue more reſpected then my own Children? Liedge (quoth Orſon) be not lightly carryed away to beleeue this accuſation, for I proteſt I am cleare of any ſuch thought, and ſhall proue enuy the author of all theſe Treaſons. Speake no more (ſayd the king) for if the knife be found in the bed, I will craue no further proofe. So calling to his Lords, hee ſayd, Lords I was neuer ſo ſuddenly confounded as at this preſent. Sir ſayd Millon Daugler, I know not what to ſay, but I cannot beleeue that Orſon is guilty of the Treaſon againſt your Maieſty, yea (but ſaid the King) if we find a knife in the bed, it is an euident ſigne to moue me to beleeue it, I pray let vs go make tryall. So the King went himſelfe into the Chamber accompanied with many witneſſes, and being there, they found the knife, as Garnier ſayd: alas ſayd the king in whom may I truſt, when my owne kinſman ſeeketh my life, but I vow he ſhall ſuffer a ſhamefull death. With that a valiant knight named Symon came to Orſon, (which loued him well) and ſayd: alas ſir, flie and ſaue your life, for the King hath found the knife in his bed, and ſo the King hath vowed your death. Orſon ſayd, I feare nothing. The king entred the Hall where Orſon was guarded with 51 Knights, and ſo aſſembling his Peeres, he proceeded to Iudgement.

Orſon being brought before the king, and his Lords, he ſayd vnto them: Worthy Lords, ſince my words cannot defend me, I require but the cuſtome of your Countrey, which is that when a man ſhall be accuſed of murther or treaſon, he might craue the combate againſt his enemy.

Now for my part, I hold my ſelfe innocent, which I will maintaine, if by your counſells you grant me that which in right belongeth to me: and further to cleare my ſelfe, loe there is my gage: if I be ouercome doe with my body as pleaſeth you. Garnier ſaid, Orſon I thinke you were better hold your peace, for the thing being already proued, we haue no reaſon to anſwer you in the field. Ah Traitor, there is nothing yet proued, but that a man that feareth

damna-

damnation, and deſireth honour, ſaith ſo. Upon theſe woꝛds the twelue Peeres of France cauſed *Oꝛſon* to be remoued out of the place, and alſo the bꝛothers his aduerſaries, while in the meane ſpace the reſt diſputed the Queſtion. At laſt it was adiudged, that Oꝛſons demand was reaſonable, and that hee ought to be heard. Then were the Bꝛothers called in againe beꝛoꝛe the King, then Duke Myllon demanded of Garnier, who were confederats with him in the kings death. Lꝛds (quoth he) I will not bewꝛay them foꝛ all the wealth in France, *Garnier* (ſaid the Judge) I giue ſentence that you and your bꝛother take vp *Oꝛſons* gage, and fight with him, foꝛ ſince you conceale the reſt of theſe murtherers, it is to be doubted that there is malice in the plot. *Oꝛſon* at this ſentence reioyced, and caſt his Gloue down vnto the two Tꝛaytoꝛs, ſaying: Lꝛds beere is my Gloue that I caſt down to theſe two traitoꝛs, vpon this condition, that if my cauſe be foule, oꝛ by them conquered, I offer my body to your will and pleaſure: Riſe then ſayd the king, foꝛ iudgment is paſt: and foꝛ your further ſecurity, it were good we had ſome boſtage: with that *Haufray* and Henry offred themſelues body foꝛ body foꝛ *Garnier* and his Bꝛother: and foꝛ Oꝛſon, ſtood Millon Daugler, and Duke *Sampſon*, So a months day was aſſigned foꝛ the combat.

The time being come that they ſhould fight, Duke Myllon Daugler, Sampſon, *Galeram*, and *Gervais* bꝛought forth *Oꝛſon*, foꝛ he was wel-beloued: when he was armed and well mounted, he rode thꝛough the City nobly accompanied, toward the place appointed. Long had he not been there, but Haufray and Henry entred the field with their two Nephewes royally armed. *Garnier* and Florent the two Tꝛaytoꝛs, greatly feared *Oꝛſon*, but Haufray and *Henry* ſtill comfoꝛted them, pꝛomiſing them aid. Being thus in readines, the Biſhop of Paris went vnto them and gaue vnto them all three an Oath, accoꝛding to the Law of Armes, and then the Biſhop departed away. After came the Heraulds, and the ſergeants of the field, to cleare the place. Now Haufray had pꝛouided 3000. Men hard by and giuen them command, that as ſoone as they heard him blow his hoꝛne, they ſhould ſet foꝛward toward him. This gladded the Tꝛaytoꝛs at the heart, but it little auayled them: foꝛ aſſoone as

the

the Trumpets gaue ſignall, Orſon couched his Speare, and putting his ſpurs to his horſe, ran vpon them with ſuch fury, and lent Garnier ſuch a ſtroke, that he ran through both ſhield and Armor, Florent on the other ſide gaue Orſon a blow that he thought hee had ſtrucken againſt a Tower. Falſe and accurſed traytor (quoth Orſon) that haſt wrongfully accuſed mee, ere this day paſſe, I ſhall ſhew thee where loyalty doth reſt, and with theſe words, hee with his ſword ſmote Garnier out of his ſaddle, and withall pulled off his Helme, and had cut off his head, if his Brother Florent had not reſcued him.

Againe, Orſon made towards Garnier, and ſtriking off his eare, ſayd, Faire Maiſter I would be loath you ſhould looſe by the bargaine. Here began a freſh Combate betweene theſe three Champions. Garnier hauing recouered againe his Helme, came vpon Orſon with all his force, thinking to haue left ſome marke of that encounter, but had not his brother relieued him, hee had ſoon been ſlaine. Thus Orſon had enough to do with theſe two, for they were of ſtout courage, and beſide they relyed much vpon reſcue from Haufray and Henry, but ſtill Orſon followed, and at laſt ſo wounded Garnier that he was faine to forſake his Horſe. Being on the ground, he ſmote at Orſons horſe, inſomuch that he cut off one of his legs, and felled him to the earth, but Orſon being light and ſtrong, leapt from off his back, and being on the ground, he came and took Garnier betweene his armes ſo ſtrongly, that hee tooke away his ſhield, and threw him on the earth: but as he would haue wounded him in the belly, Florent came vpon Orſon, and gaue ſuch a ſtroke on his helme, that he made him ſtagger. Orſon vered hereat, ſmote him ſo, that he ouerthrew his Horſe dead to the earth, and after took off his helm. Florent was ſo aſhamed hereat, that he ran vp and down the field couering his head with his ſhield, and Orſon took pleaſure in chaſing of him ſo. Florent (ſaid his brother) flie not, returne, or we ſhall be banquiſhed. And herewithall they made a freſh encounter vpon Orſon, and with their ſwords laid on ſo luſtily, that the ſtrokes entred his Armor, and drew blood, Orſon feeling himſelfe wounded, ſmote off one of Florents armes: but yet he gaue not ouer. Orſon eſpying him making a blow at him, made as

if

if he would haue ſtroke at Garnier, but ſuddenly with-drawing his arme, hit *Florent* in ſuch wiſe, that he fell down dead to the earth, and after ſayd vnto *Garnier*: Traitor thou ſhalt after, except thou confeſſe the Treaſon. Not ſo *Orſon* for I will be reuenged on thee for my brothers death. Haufray and Henry diſliked the match, and ſaid one of Our Nephews is ſlaine, and if he ouercome the other, he will cauſe him to confeſſe the Treaſon, and thereby bring vs in danger. Brother ſayd Haufray, I will tell you what may be done: as ſoone as we perceiue *Garnier* to be ouercome, before he confeſſe any thing, we will enter the field, and make as if we came to cheere vp *Orſon*, and we will cut off our Nephews head, and ſo the treaſon ſhall not be knowne. Quoth Henry be it ſo. Now are both the Champions at it in the field. *Garnier* (ſaid *Orſon*) you ſee you cannot eſcape my hands, therefore confeſſe the Treaſon, and I will ſaue your life. Boy (quoth *Garnier*) thy faire promiſes are little worth, for ſeeing that I haue loſt an eare, I little reſpect any place of honour, ſo rather chooſing to die valiantly, or conquer thee, I ſet down my reſt that here I will finiſh my tortunes, either to conquer or be conquered. Agreed (quoth *Orſon*) and ſith death is ſo welcome to thee, defend thy life, for this ſhall be thy longeſt day of life: and then he makes at *Garnier*, and by ſtrength of armes threw him vnder him and pulled off his Helme. Haufray ſeeing there was no way but one, cried out, *Orſon* ſlay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accuſed you, ſo we will do ſuch Iuſtice vpon him as to ſo foule a fact appertaineth: and Haufray ſayd vnto *Garnier*: nephew confeſſe your fact and we will be a meanes vnto the K. for your pardon. Lords ſaid *Garnier*, I did put the knife into the kings Bed: In ſpeaking theſe words, Haufray drew out his ſword, running him quite through, and after ſaid: Lords, let this Traitor be hanged on the Gallowes as hee hath well deſerued: but cozen *Orſon*, I am glad of your victory, for it prooueth you innocent: and though *Garnier* were my nephew, yet will I neuer acknowledge him of my bloud. Now was come the Lady *Fezon* who was glad of *Orſons* victory. B. *Pepin* alſo came, ſaying: nephew you haue endured dangerous wounds. Uncle (quoth *Orſon*) the traitors are banquiſhed, and *Haufray* made *Garnier* to confeſſe the Treaſon,

and

and ſo killed him. Nephew, beware of that Haufray, for he hath ſurely a hand in it, but for this time I will hold my peace. The K. and the Barons returned into the City of Paris, and made great ioy for the victory. Haufray and Henry ſpake well of him, but in their hearts they imagined miſchiefe, which after came to light, and they had their deſert: where we leaue them, and returne to Valentine who rode from place to place to find out Clerimond.

Valentine hauing trauailed along, at laſt arriued in the City of Antioch, thinking to finde the Lady Clerimond. Pacolet being with him, could ſpeake their language, and tooke vp their lodging in a great mans houſe: but the hoſt of the houſe was ſomewhat doubtfull: and when they were in the Chamber, he would hearken, inſomuch that at laſt he vnderſtood they were Chriſtians, whereupon he went to the king of Antioch, and ſaid: Sir, there are foure Chriſtians in my houſe, that haue entred your land without paying of tribute. The King ſayd, thou haſt well done, let them be brought before me, ſo being ſent for, he ſaid thus to Valentine: Chriſtian I let thee vnderſtand, that there be two things, one of which you muſt make choice of, or elſe ſuffer death. What is it (quoth Valentine) for I will doe any thing to ſaue my life. The king ſaid, you muſt either renounce your Chriſtian Faith, or elſe fight with a dreadfull Dragon, that hath deuoured many men: thee is bigger then a Horſe, winged like a ſowle, feathered like a Griffon, the head of a ſerpent, a great ſting within her mouth, a fierce looke, the skin couered with red ſcales, and ſhe hath the feet of a Lyon, quoth Valentine this is ſome hideous monſter, yet I will try my fortune againſt her, if you will grant me but one requeſt, which is that if I conquer this Dragon, you will then change your Mahometry, and become Chriſtian. The king bound it with an oath that he would, for there was neuer any yet returned aliue that attempted it, ſir (quoth Valentine) let me haue about or Two with this Monſter. Then he cauſed a ſhield to be made, and thereon faſtned a great number of long Pikes of ſteele a foot long, as ſharpe as needles.

This ſhield being made, Valentine put on Armour, and buckling on his Helme, then girded his ſword to his ſide, tooke leaue of his men, and mounting his Horſe, yſſued out of the City. Being gon, every

euery one gat vp into their Windowes to behold this fight. Now they of the City, were faine to prouide for the Dragon, either the carkasse of a man, or of a beast, which if they failed, none durst venter out of the City: but hauing eaten her prey, she would returne into her Den againe without doing any harme. All such Malefactors as any way had deserued death, were continually thrown vnto this fearefull monster, but if that they had no malefactors, then they went vnto the Sea side, for to take vp Christians, if they hapned to come on shore, and they were brought to be deuoured of the Dragon.

Now by this time is Valentine within the sight of the Dragon, shee seeing one comming towards her, clapt her wings most

fiercely casting out of her mouth flames like Fire. Then he descended off his horse, and left his sharpe Axe at his middle boss, and went toward the serpent thinking to haue smitten her, but she lep-

ted

ſed vp her paw to ſmite at Valentine, who ſubtlely watching his oppoꝛtunity, lifted vp his ſhield (armed as you haue heard with ſpikes) and ſo the Serpent bꝛoached her foot vpon them, who feeling her ſelfe hurt, ſhe cryed out moſt hoꝛribly, dꝛawing backe and recopling. Valeutine purſued, but when the Serpent ſaw him apꝛoach ſhe roſe vp on her feet, and thought to haue beaten downe Valentine with her foꝛe feet vnder her, but fearing the ſhield, ſhe ran back. The king beholding this, ſayd: See yonder is a moſt valiant knight, whom we ought to reuerence foꝛ his hardines. Alſo, the faire Queen Rozamond fell in loue with Valentine, to ſee him ſo aduenturous.

Now grew the battell fierce and dangerous betweene Valentine and the Dꝛagon, but ſtill ſhe feared the pꝛicking of the ſhield, by which he held her play. In the one hand he bare his ſhield, and the other his Swoꝛd, wherwith he gaue the ſerpent a marueilous blow vnder the eare, but with the blow he bꝛake his ſwoꝛd. Valentine was in great danger when his ſwoꝛd was bꝛoken, foꝛ the beaſt grew ſo angry, that with her paw ſhe rent his Armoꝛ quite thoꝛow. Valentine ſtill purſued her, and dꝛew foꝛth a knife and ſtuck it in her thꝛoat, but ſhe little regarded it. Valentine ſeeing al this do nothing, ran and fetched the Axe at his ſaddle-bow, and returning vnto her ſubtlely waiting his aduantage, gaue the ſerpent ſuch a blow with his Axe, that her cut off moſt part of her taple, whereat ſhee roared moſt hideouſly. After this ſhe flew at Valentines head, and pulling off his Helme ſmot him to the ground, but he quickly getting vp, was halfe amazed at his head vncouered. Pacolet perceiuing his Maſter in diſtreſſe, got into the city, and put himſelfe in armes, got another helme and bare it to his maſter. Valentine perceiuing him, ſayd, friend, I am well-nie ſpent, ga thy wayes and commend me to my friends foꝛ if thou ſtay here thou muſt die with me: but foꝛ all this Pacolet came to Valentine and deliuered the helme, the ſerpent ſeeing that came to Pacolet, and taking him by the right leg, puld him down vnder him, giuing him a cruſh with his paw, that he felt it through his armoꝛ, & had ſlaine him, had not Valentine with his Axe cut off her noſe, and put out one of her eyes: theſe hurts made the beaſt mad, and opening her wings, ſhe flew to the top of a

high

high rocke. Then went Valentine to his helme, thinking to haue put it on againe, but ſuddenly the beaſt came flying down and he was faine to couer his head with his ſhield, which the Dragon eſpying, returned againe to the rocke. Then Pacolet put on Valentines helme and ſaid, ſir, I am ſore wounded and muſt of neceſſity return to the city to get ſome reliefe, for my heart faileth, ſo they tooke leaue. Aſſoone as the Dragon ſaw him a great way off, ſhe aſſayed Valentine, and flying directly at his head thought to haue layd hold thereon: but Valentine threw his Axe ſo right, that he cut off one of her wings, whereby ſhe could not fly. The dragon being downe, Valentine quickly ſmote off the other wing, ſo that the battell was moſt violent betweene them, inſomuch that hee was not able to lift vp his arme any longer to weild his axe, but leaning all, he got vp into a tree to reſt his wearied limbes, and the beaſt not able any more to fly, beheld him with a cruell countenance, caſting forth of his mouth nothing but ſtinking vapors.

Valentine being well refreſhed, came downe and went towards the dragon that ran fiercely at him, Valentine ſtill put the ſhield before him, and with his axe cut off her left thigh, wherewith ſhe fell to the earth. Valentine ſtill purſued his ſtrokes, and ran his Axe ſo farre it her throat that ſhee fell downe dead. Valentine hauing thus ouercome the Dragon, the King called vnto him, and ſaid, of all Knights thou art the moſt hardieſt, for by thy valour is our City deliuered of a fearefull enemy that hath much endamaged vs: with theſe words they entred the City, and ſo to the Pallace, where a ſolemne feaſt was held. Then the King cauſed Valentines wounds to be carefully healed. The Queene likewiſe highly honoured him, for ſhee was enamored on him ſo hotly that for to gaine his loue, ſhee would haue wrought the death of the King her husband.

Valentine hauing well refreſhed himſelfe, and healed his wounds within the City of Antioch, hee ſayd vnto the king, ſir you remember your promiſe that you and your people would receiue baptiſme, if I ouercame the dragon: you ſee ſhe is ſlaine by me only. True ſaid the K. and looke what I promiſed I will performe: and thereupon ſent his preſent Edict through out his Land, that euery one

ſhould

should forsake Mahomet, and be baptized. The Queen sent for Valentine to her chamber, who presently went to her, and said: Lady I am come at your commaund, and ready to do you service. Ah said the Lady thou art of great hardinesse, wisedome, strength, and all the beautifudes belonging to a famous Warriour, happy is the lady that shall enioy thy love, O that I were not a woman, or a woman not under subiection, O, I could love thee beyond humane reason, hadst thou but so much liberty as to embrace me, or to grant me love. Lady I thanke you, but you have wedded a puissant king, and him onely aught you to love and honour. Knight, tis true, I have been ever constant to him, but since I first beheld thee, all my thoughts are captivated: Valentine seeing the Queene so eager, replyed: Lady, if the king should but know or suspect me, I should surely be put to death againe, he is old, you young, rest your selfe content till I returne from my intended iourney to the holy Sepulchre, and then if the king be dead I will willingly give my selfe vnto you. Hereupon thee playd the part of many women that are weary of their husbands for the love of others. Even so began this Queene to practise, for on a night, as the queen was going to Bed, a cup of wine was brought vnto him (as the custome was) wherein she had conveyed poyson, and after presented it vnto the king: but he having some doubt thereof, disliked it, crying: Lady, looke what drinke you have brewed, either drinke it your selfe, or tell me what you have put into it. The Lady being in this perplexity knew not what to say, but falling on her knees, craved pardon, and said that Valentine procured her to do it. I do beleeue thee quoth the K. and pardon thee, so they lay together that night: but she still requested that Valentine might be put to death. He shall as sure as I live quoth the king. So he hearing the king say so, was very sorrowfull, and secretly calling one of her Pagens sent to Valentine to tell him her will, and what the king had decreed against him: Valentine hearing of this accusation whereof he was innocent said: what will not a woman undertake? Now for the love of the queen must I depart like a Traitor, or else lay her shame open to the world: well, I will rather depart with dishonour to my selfe, then her: and then he shall calling vp his attendants before the morning,

he

hee departed the city, and came to the Sea ſide, where lay a ſhip full of paſſengers ready to put off, in among the reſt goes he and his company, ſo hoyſting ſailes they departed. On the morrow, when the king was vp, hee cauſed all his Nobles to be aſſembled, and ſaid vnto them: Lords, I am moſt deceiued in the man whom I truſted, and he whom in heart I held deareſt hath betrayed mee, Valentine I meane, who for to gaine the lawleſſe loue of my queen, hath ſtirred her vp to poyſon me, therefore let vs proceed to iudge him to ſome ſhamefull death.

Amongſt the reſt, an aged wiſe Baron ſayd, we haue no reaſon to proceed againſt an Offender, without calling him to anſwere. Againe, were he neuer ſo great an offender, we ought to heare him. Whereupon Valentine was ſent for: but inſtead of Valentine came his hoſt, who told them Valentine was gone before the breake of the day from his houſe, but whither he knew not. The king hearing this, ſuddenly ſent forth men to follow and purſue him, but all in vaine, for hee was paſt their reach on the ſea.

Shortly after that the king of Antioch was conuerted, his wiues Father Brandiffer a Turke, had ſo great ſpleene againſt the King for altering his religion, that he ſent to him for his daughter *Rozamond*. When the king heard his vniuſt demand he gainſayed him: hereupon Brandiffer came againſt him with an 100000. Pagans, and beſledged his city: At laſt, within the compaſſe of foure months, by reaſon he obtained it, tooke the king priſoner, and ſuddenly put him to death, and crowned himſelfe King of Antioch. This done, hee returned into his Realme, but as hee was on the Seas, by a Tempeſt he was forced into the land of *Greece* into a little City called Cretophe.

Within this city by chance was the Emperour of Greece newly arriued then and hee and the Green Knight with ſome other company, rid forth to ſport themſelues (not knowing of the pagans being there, fell into the hands of Brandiffers Souldiers, and hauing gotten them haſted towards the gates of the city, thinking to haue ſeized the whole City but they found it manfully defended.

The men of *Cretophe* were very ſorrowfull for the loſſe of the Emperour and the Green Knight. At laſt they determined to ſend

Letters vnto Bellyſant of what hapned, and to demand aid againſt theſe Pagans. The Lady receiuing theſe Letters was wondrous ſad, and ſending for their Captaines and men of warre, made preparation for a ſpeedy reuenge. Alſo ſhee ſent for her ſonne Orion, and craued aid of her brother king Pepin. Being thus in a readineſſe, they were ſent to the ſuccour of the Emperor: But Brandiffer had ſcouts abroad to giue him notice of all that happened, and fearing the forces of the Greekes, and their priſoners loſſe, they ſtole to the Sea-ſide, ſo taking Ship, they in ſhort ſpace arriued at Lize in which place they tooke a Caſtle, wherein was kept his Two daughters, Rozamond and Galize, who for her beauty had been demaunded of Fourteene kings, Brandiffer had yet no meaning to marry her, wherefore hee cauſed her to be kept within this Caſtle for it was the ſtrongeſt in the land: For it had a bridge made by ſuch cunning art that but one could paſſe at a time: at the end of this bridge, two fierce Lyons ſtood to keepe the entry into this caſtle. The Lady Galize was kept in a dungeon, vnder which was a Caue, wherein the Emperour, and the Greene Knight, with other chriſtians which had been there a long time. Where leaue we them, and we ſhall ſhew you ſome-what of the faire Lady Clerimond, which ſtill remayned in Inde.

CHAP. XLVI.

How *Clerimond* after the yeare was paſt, faigned her ſelfe mad becauſe ſhe would not wed the king of *Inde*. And of *Lucar* that would reuenge the death of his Father king *Trompart* vpon the King of *Inde*. And how king *Lucar* in the City of *Eſclardy*, wedded *Rozamond* the faire daughter of *Brandiffer*. And how *Valentine* departed from *Eſclardy*, to breath out defiance: and of the anſwere he brought from the *Indian* king. And how *Rozamond* found a way to be taken and led vnto the *Indian* King, and how King *Lucar* cauſed *Brandiffer* to ſtay with him, and ſent *Valentine* into *Angory* againſt king *Pepin*: and how king *Pepin* tooke the city of *Angory*.

YOu haue heard already of the death of K. Trompart, who ſtole away the Lady Clerimond vpon Pacolets horſe: alſo, how that ſhe got pardon for one whole yeare, before that ſhe would marry. Now is the time expired, and all this while appeareth no ſuccour for her reliefe, which ſhee ſo long hath expected. Therefore (poore Lady) now is ſhee put vnto her ſhifts and to ſaue her Mayden-head, ſhe faygned her ſelfe very ſicke. This newes came to the kings eare, that the faire clerimond was extreame ſicke, at which he grew very ſad, and came to viſit her. At laſt, he would haue put his hand vpon her head to haue held it, but ſhe refuſing took his arme and lift vp her head her ſelfe, making ſignes that ſhee would bite him, at which action he wondred, and grew much aſtonied thereat.

After this, ſhe rowled her eyes vp and downe, and made greeuous faces, in ſuch wiſe that the king got him out of the Chamber, fearing leaſt ſhee would proue mad. In this manner ſhee abode a long time, and ſhee did act the matter ſo well that within fifteene dayes ſhee ſeemed more like a beaſt then a Woman: ſhee made all her attendants forſake her, for if ſhe caught them, ſhe would leaue ſome marke behind her, ſo they left her alone giuing her meate at the window, for none would come neare her. One while put her ſmocke vppermoſt, anon all be dabd her face with foot, and in this eſtate the K. came and beheld her, lamenting her diſtemper, and ſaid vnto her: Lady, now is the time come that I ſhould haue had you to wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady vnderſtanding him well, made ſhew as if ſhee would heare him, but then ſhe fell into a ſtronger fit of madnes, one while ſhe would run againſt the chimney, another while fall into a great laughter, then ſit downe and make faces, and all to preſerue her chaſtity. Many waies was tryed for her recouery, yet none preuailed: ſo leaue we her in her Chamber, and returne to Valentine, who with an ardent deſire is roued abroad, accompanied with Pacolet, to finde out the Lady clerimond. Long haue they trauelled to find out the Lady clerimond. And now are they arryued in Eſclardy, which was the kingdome of *Trompart*, who carried away the lady on Pacolets horſe: Being in the city they asked for K. *Trom*:

ſo they told him hee was ſlaine by the king of Inde, and that now at this preſent, Lucar his ſonne would reuenge his death vpon the K. of Inde, and to that end hee hath newly muſtred vp his powers, and waged many royall kings to vndertake this Warre. Then ſpake Pacolet, who well vnderſtood the Language, ſaying: of what account is this king Lucar? for the Hoſt where he lay told him, that he ſhould ſhortly marry with the Daughter of Brandiffer that was late wife to the king of Antioch, who was ſlaine by Brandiffer for that hee forſooke his Religion.

At this tale Valentine was much abaſhed, and wondred at this ſudden alteration, but at laſt he ſaid: Know ye what is become of the Lady that king Trompart did bring with him? Of her we heare no tydings (quoth the Hoſt) tell me then where is King Lucar at this preſent, I would faine ſerue vnder him for wages, for my money is faine ſhort, and I haue a great deſire to follow the wars? Marry, ſaid the Hoſt, King Lucar is in Eſclardy, and there you ſhall finde him accompanied with a huge hoaſt, and hee attendeth Brandiffer to receiue his daughter in wedlocke. Valentine knowing all this, hee hoped to heare of Clerimond, and ſo hee departed, and came to Eſclardy, to ſerue king Lucar.

Lucar being in the Citty of Eſclardy thither came Brandiffer with his daughter. At ſight of whom king Lucar was ioyfull, but the Lady was ſad, for of all other ſhee could never affect him. The Lady was led into the Hall, and there married vnto king Lucar. Valentine was abroad, and entring a wood, hee heard the crying voice of a woman, whom a Sarazen would haue rauiſhed: Valentine ſtill heard the cry, and ſaid vnto Pacolet: Ride faſter for this cry is more and more in mine eare, and we ſhall do a charitable deed, in releeuing the oppreſſed, ſir ſaid Pacolet, meddle not in this matter, for you know not in what danger you may be drawn into.

Pacolet thou ſpeakeſt fooliſhly, for hee is not worthie the name of a Knight, that will not ayd in time of neceſſity: ſo he rode vp and downe the wood, till at laſt he lighted on the Sarazin that had gotten a Lady vnder him. Then Valentine ſayd, my friend, forſake your Lady, or elſe betake you to your armes, and combate with me, for you may well perceiue thee loueth you not. By Mahomet

(quoth

(quoth the Pagan) I accept of this thy challenge, and make thee know that in an euill houre camſt thou hither. Theſe words paſt he left the Lady, and mounted his horſe, and then took his ſhield and ſpeare, and being prepared, they ſet out one at the other ſo fiercely, that Valentine ran his ſpeare quite through the body of the Pagan, inaſmuch as he fell down dead. Then went Valentine to the mayden, ſaying Damoſell, now is your enemy laid in the duſt, but I pray ſhew me the cauſe why this man brought you into this wood: ſir, I will tell nothing ſaue the truth. So it was, that peſternight late he came into my Fathers houſe to lodge, and there attempting the ble of my body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the chamber of my Father, and there ſlew him. Afterward he thought he ſhould ſurely haue got his will on me, in this manner as you ſee, from which by your manhood I am freed, and mine honor ſaued. Do with me what pleaſeth you, for your body hath ranſomed mine, and beſides, as you haue woon me I yeeld me to your pleaſure.

Damoſell, by me thou ſhalt receiue no wrong, return vnto your houſe, and keepe well your chaſtity. So Valentine left the Maiden, and tooke his way towards Eſclardy. This ſlaine Pagan had certaine Attendants which were gon to ſeeke him, and aſſoone as they found him dead, they told this miſfortune to the king, ſaying our Maſter and your Marſhall lies ſlaine in the wood. The king was hereat right heauy, and preſently ſent out a ſearch to ſee if they could finde the murtherer. At laſt Valentine and his company were taken, bound and beaten, by the Kings commandement. Now in this Caſtle was Rozamond, who knew Valentine, and was very ſorrowfull for him, and anon ſhe went vnto the king, and ſayd: Alas ſir, do this knight no harme, for I vow he is the valiant ſt knight breathing. He is called Valentine of France, that ſlew the mighty Dragon before the City of *Antioch*, make much of him, and retaine him into your ſeruice, for his fellow liues not in the world. Lady (ſayd the King) diuers times haue I heard much talke of his proweſſe, and I haue much deſired to haue a ſight of him. Then he called Valentine vnto him, and ſayd, Knight feare not death, but know that aboue all men I loue and hold you deare, you, and

all yours I receiue into my pay, marry one thing yet remaineth, which you muſt doe for me, which is that you goe into Inde, and defie the king therof in my name, telling him that I am ready prepared to auenge the death of my Father, whom he hath shamefully put to death, except he come presently before me with a cord about his necke, ready to receiue such sentence, as by me and my Barons shall be impoſed vpon him. If he deny it, tell him, I will shortly viſite him & his land with war and not leaue one towne nor village vnranſacked, nor ſpare the life of any. Sir (ſayd Valentine) all this ſhall I gladly do, although I do know it to be a dangerous aduenture.

The Queen Rozamond ſeeing Valentine ready to depart, entred into the Chamber and by one of her Damoſels ſent for him: when he came to her he ſaluted her with great reuerence, and ſhe ſaid to him: knight you are welcome, for I had a great deſire to ſee you. So had I Lady (quoth Valentine) as great a deſire to ſee you: for ſince I ſaw you I vnderſtand your Husband is dead, and that you are newly marryed againe. Lady you know, that for the loue of you within Antioch I ſuſtained much danger of life. It is true (ſaid the Lady) and I acknowledge my ſelfe guilty, and it grew onely out of loue to you. But now hath my father beſtowed me to K. Lucar, who is rich aboue meaſure, yet can I not fancy him: he is a perfidious Traitor, and ſince you entred this Pallace, he growes ſo iealous of you, that he ſendeth you into Inde, truſting you ſhall neuer returne, for neuer yet any came backe againe aliue: but I will circumuent him, and ſet you free from danger. Therefore know this, that not long agoe the king of Inde requeſted me for his wife, and the truth is, I loued him better then this traitor, but my Father croſſed me in it: now this king of Inde in token of loue ſent me a ring, which hitherto I haue kept, and not ſhewed to any ſaue your ſelfe, but ſeeing I perceiue the malice of Lucar towards you, I will giue you that which ſhall defend you from danger, and make you returne a victorious knight, and though I am aſſured you haue no need of my loue, in that you haue promiſed it to another Lady, yet I cannot forget my heart, which for your loue lies enthralled. Therefore when you come before the K. of Inde this ſhall you doe.

After

After reuerence made, and ſalutations from K. Lucar, next greet him from me, as my loue and ſecret Friend, and tell him, that though my Father haue giuen me vnto king Lucar, yet his loue cannot once ſlip out of my breaſt, but ſtill hath an aſſured and full hope one day to meet with him againe, when as we may enioy our wiſhed pleaſures: tell him alſo that when King Lucar bringeth his Hoſt, I will come with him, and then if there be any valour in him, hee may carry me away whether he will. Now to the end he ſhall not find your words to be vaine, beare him this ring. Lady (quoth Valentine, for your care, loue and good will toward me. I humbly thanke you, and haue no doubt but that I ſhall deliuer your meſſage ſo effectually to the king of Inde, that you ſhall ſhortly receiue anſwer therof. So taking his leaue he went to king Lucar who allowed him 10 Marriners to conduct him ouer an arme of the ſea that lyeth between Eſclardy and Inde, ſo that hauing a proſperous wind the next morrow they arriued at a Port two miles from the Pallace of the k. of Inde. Then Valentine being arriued, he drew forth his horſe out of the ſhip, and backed him, and ſayd vnto the Marriners abide here till my returne, for it ſhall not be long ere I be diſpatched. One of the Marriners ſayd vnto the reſt, if thou return the Diuell muſt bring thee, for of fifty meſſengers not one returned againe. Valentine ouer-heard this muttering ſpeech, but made no anſwer, ſo he took his way to the City. And when he was neere the Pallace, he alighted off his horſe and went to the king, who was in his Hall richly adorned, accompanied with three kings. As he came vp the Hall, the king ſaluted him with a wrinckled brow, and thought he was a Meſſenger from k. Lucar, and therefore ſaid aloud vnto him, art thou not a ſeruant of k. Lucars? ſir (ſaid Valentine) I am, and bring you ſuch tydings as will fret your heart: but on the other ſide, I bring ſuch gladſome news, that your very heart will leape to heare it, from the faire Rozimond. Meſſenger, know this, that in deſpight of king Lucar thou ſhouldſt haue ſuffered death: but for the loue & reuerence that I owe vnto that Lady, thou ſhalt receiue no iniury: if ſo it be that thou canſt ſhew me ſome token from her? Yes, ſaid Valentine, that ſhall I ſhew you, and deliuer my meſſage with ſuch applauſe, that I will not ſwerue from the

truth thereof. That I belong to king Lucar, you know: who by me ſendeth theſe words, that for the death of his father, you muſt come and yeeld to his mercy, with a rope about your necke, as a man guilty of ſo foule a deed, to receiue ſentence of death according to your deſert: if you refuſe it (as a Meſſenger) I breath defiance againſt you, and tell you, that he will ſhortly come and lay waſt your Land, and ranſacke your Dominions.

Meſſenger, I vnderſtand thee, and ſet light by theſe his bold threats: and for anſwere to this matter thou ſhalt haue Letters, wherein ſhall be explained how little we regard his Menaces, and alſo how ready I am to receiue his forces that ſhall come to whip my Land. There leaue thou theſe proud brags, and returne to that thou haſt to ſay, concerning the faire Lady Rozamond, for I moſt of all deſire to heare from her: Sir, (ſaid Valentine) on her behalfe I ſalute you as her loue, and ſhe ſendeth you word that ſhe is againſt her will married to king Lucar whom ſhe neuer loued. Againe the poore Lady is ſo burthened with loue towards you, that if ſhe might haue her will, you ſhould ſoone perceiue, that none ſhould enioy her but you if you be ſo content.

Now to come yet ſomewhat neerer, ſhe told me, that ſhee will come hither in the company of the king her Husband, when he taketh vp armes to inuade you, and then you may finde other means to accompliſh your deſire euen as you would. By Mahomet ſayes the Indian king, this pleaſeth me exceedingly. Sir (ſaid Valentine) whether theſe come from a true heart or no I cannot ſay, but for token that all is true that I haue ſaid receiue here the Ring which you gaue vnto her, & though women proue variable, yet me thinkes ſhe ſpeaketh vnto you from her inward breſt. Friend (quoth he) this is the ſame ring indeed, and my heart is ouercome with ioy, go thy waies in, and take thy repaſt, while in the meane time I get the letters ready thou ſhalt take with thee to anſwer his defiance.

Valentine went in as the K. commanded, and was highly feaſted, and he ſtill demanded after Clerimond, but could not heare of her. By this time came the King, and deliuered vnto him the Letters, and Valentine taking his leaue of him, knew not that his loue was in this Court, who abode many euill dayes for the

loue

loue of him, and ſtill deſired to heare ſome newes of him. In the end he ſhall find her, but hee muſt ſuffer many Tribulations, and hard Atchieuements, as you ſhall afterwards heare more at large.

Valentine made great haſt to be freed out of Inde, and taking Horſe, he came to the Hauen where the Mariners ſtayed: at his comming, the Mariners were amazed, and thought that he had not done his meſſage, maiſters (quoth Valentine) feare nothing for I haue accompliſhed my meſſage, and I am ſafely returned. Then the marines ſayd, we much maruell thereat.

At theſe words he tooke ſhip and on the morrow they were in Eiclardy, valentine made no ſtay, but aſſoone as he was deſcended his Horſe, he went to the paliace of the king, finding him there accompanied with B. Brandiffer and fourteene other kings that were come to the ſuccour of B. Lucar againſt the Indian B. Of the return of valentine they wondred, for the king ſent him of purpoſe neuer to returne, wherefore he made valentine to come before them all, to tell what tydings of his meſſage. Valentine began thus to ſay, he regards not all your threats a ſtraw. He is fierce and proud, and ſayes, if you haue a mind to come to him, he hath a greater deſire to receiue you, then you haue to come, and that you may know I deliuer nothing ſaue the truth, here is a Letter ſealed with his own hand, in which you ſhall vnderſtand his mind more at large. This Letter being broke open, they found valentines words to be true. King Brandiffer vnderſtanding his anſwere, ſware by all the gods that hee would neuer returne home againe, but with victory or loſſe of life.

The next morrow they betooke them to the ſeas with an hoſt of 200000 Sarazens. So the king carried Rozamond along with him, and they were quickly there. Being landed, they pitched their tents in a pleaſant field before the city, leſt they of the city made faſt the Gates. The king himſelfe got vp into a high Tower to behold their order, ſo by the riuer ſide he might eſpy their rich Pauillions, gallantly furniſhed with armes, and ſtreamers: then the king called vnto him certaine Heralds of armes to know by thoſe armes whoſe tents they were. The firſt (quoth he) is Brandiffers, the ſecond is Lucars, and the third is Rozamonds with her ladies:

When

When the king vnderſtood that Rozamond was there, his heart leaped for ioy, and ſaid: it is now time to ſleepe, hee that will haue the loue of a faire Lady, muſt venter life and goods, or elſe he is not worthy of her that will take no paines. Herevpon reſoluing, he preſently put his men in battell aray, and ſuddenly yſſued out of the city vpon his enemies, ſo that they were not in a readines, for they little thought the Indian had been ſo fierce, but loue made him doe it.

When the king ſaw Brandiffer ordering his men in battel aray, he left his companies, with much diligence rode toward the Pauillion of the Ladies: Now when Rozamond beheld it was hee, ſhe gaue all the reſt of the company the ſlip, and ran violently into his armes, who ioyfully receiued her. The Indian perceiuing her good will, got her vp behind him, and putting ſpurs to his horſe, ſhe ſaid: my loue is fixed onely on you, and for your loue haue I long mourned, for I neuer hated man ſo much as I do K. Lucar, but now I pray thee let me bid him farewell, and I will keepe my ſelfe onely to thee, as long as I liue. Lady (quoth the Indian) doubt not for I will not faile you, and here I vow ere three dayes paſſe, you ſhall be Queene of India, and Miſtris of all my lands. Theſe words paſſed as he was riding away with the Lady Rozamond. At laſt the guard of the maydens came out of the Pauillion, and ran to the king, ſaying: My Lord, there is euill tydings, for this day you haue loſt your faire Lady Rozamond, for the king of Inde your vtter enemy hath ſtolne her hence, and is ridden away with her. wherefore quickly ſend your men of War, and follow him, that they may ſaue the honour of your Queen. Hold your peace (ſayd Lucar) and talke no more, for he that hath an euill Wife, it is well if he can be ſo rid of her, although he had a heauy heart. After this, he went to K. Brandiffer, and ſaid: Sir I haue ſmall ioy of your daughter, who hath left me, to run away with a ſtranger, and one which is mine enemy, leauing me in reproach and ſhame. Faire ſon (ſayd Brandiffer) be not diſcontent at me, for to day I wil be reuenged on him that carryed her. So putting ſpurs to his horſe to ride after him, gathered a great company of men. Amongſt the reſt Valentine was one, willing to ſhew his fidelity, ſayd vnto Pacolet, now ſhew me by

thy

thy art ſomewhat. Then Pacolet raiſed ſuch a Charme, which ſo aſtonied the Indians eye ſight, that (it ſeemed to him) there was nothing before his horſe, but Woods, buſhes, and great riuers. At this he was ſo amazed, that he made the Lady alight, when the Queen was on the ground, ſhe thought ſhe ſhould haue had meanes to ſaue her ſelfe with the king, but Valentine was ſo neare her, that he ſaid vnto her: Lady abide, for you muſt go with me, for that you haue a long time promiſed me your loue. Ah Valentine, I owe you but little Loue, for once I made loue vnto you, and you refuſed me: wherefore I was forced to ſeeke another: but ſeeing I am croſſed thus, I yeeld my ſelfe as your Vaſſall, ſo you will make my peace with Lucar.

Lady (ſaid Valentine) I will do my endeauour, ſo he led her to king Lucar, and ſayd vnto him: Sir heere is the Lady Rozamond your wife, whom the Indian Traytor had led away againſt her will, for which ſhe is right ſorrowfull: Sir (quoth the Lady) hee telleth you true, for euen as the battell was begun, I ſaw one come to me, thinking it had been one of your Barons that had come to ſuccour me, and without further inquiry mounted on his Horſe: being on Horſebacke, I perceiued then that I was betrayed, ſo I ſtrugled and puld him by the haire, and ſcratched him by the face, and forcing him to let me go, I haue by the help of this good knight eſcaped. Lady (ſaid Lucar) you haue well done, and at this preſent we haue no leiſure to enquire further hereof, ſo he left the Lady and returned to the battell. They of Inde returned into the City, who had loſt diuers valiant Leaders, but none ſo fretted the Indian at the heart, as did the loſſe of Rozamond. Alas Ladie (ſaid he) I haue failed thee in thy greateſt extreamity, but I was ſurely enchanted, for on the ſudden me thought I ſaw woods, Fields, and Riuers, and ſhe was no ſooner down vpon the ground, but all was plaine e euen way before me. Valentine had great praiſe for getting againe the Lady, and ſhe ſhewed him a faire countenance, in that he had ſuccoured her: but it was all faigned, for ſhe hated him to death, and putting vp this miſchance, ſhe watched her time, and in the end accomplished her deſire, and brought her will to execution.

It is a common ſaying, women ſeldome want deceit as here it appea-

apreareth in Rozamond: foꝛ ſome foure dayes after, ſhe rode foꝛth of her tent pꝛetending to take the aire, but tooke her way toward the City of Inde and had giuen him intelligence of her intent, willing him, that when he ſaw her out of danger, ſuddenly to come and ſeize her as his pꝛiſoner, and ſo carry her away. The king did accoꝛding to her direction: ſo ſuddenly iſſuing out of a Poſterne, hee came and tooke her hoꝛſe by the head and carried her into the city.

Heereupon began a cry throughout the hoaſt of king Lucar, that Rozamond was ſurpꝛiſed, and ſhe was paſt recouery. This maddeth Lucar at the heart, and he gaue out, that whoſoeuer could recouer her out of his hands, ſhould be made great Seneſchell. Sir (ſaid Pacolet if pleaſe you to atchieue this dignity, I will ſo woꝛk, that we will fetch her backe: No, ſayd Valentine, let her go, once I regained her, thinking that ſhe would haue been conſtant vnto her husband, but all was in vaine. The ſame day that the king had her, he lay with her and begat a ſon called *Rabeitre*, who afterward had the poſſeſſion of Hieruſalem. Lucar was right ſoꝛrowfull foꝛ the loſſe of his wife, but Brandiffer his father recomfoꝛted him, ſaying, Son take courage, and let vs now be reuenged beſoꝛe we depart: but it fell out otherwiſe, foꝛ that day came a meſſenger vnto him: who bꝛought him contrary tydings, which was that K. Pepin of France, and the Emperoꝛ of *Greece* was entred his Land, burning and ſpoyling many places, and were now vpon the ſiege of *Angory*, in which City his Lady now lay in Child bed: therefoꝛe you muſt pꝛeſently take courſe to reſtraine the fury of the Enemy, oꝛ elſe endure ſuch wꝛacke as were lamentable to behold.

Brandiffer heereat amazed, want vnto his Son Lucar and ſaid: ſonne here is euill tydings be faine, the *French* are entred my land, waſting and deſtroying all things, therefoꝛe I muſt leaue you, to looke vnto mine owne: but let me tell you what you ſhall doe: ſend ſome Knight vnto the Indian, to demand your wife vpon this condition, that you ſhall firſt foꝛget the death of your Father, and that you will raiſe your ſiege and be gone. Wherefoꝛe he ſent Valentine vnto the King of Inde to declare this meſſage. He being come beſoꝛe him, ſaid: Great King, I am come from K. Lucar, who ſayes: that if you will reſtoꝛe his wife backe againe, he will foꝛget his Fathers death,

death, and will raiſe vp his ſiege and be gone. To whom the Indian thus replyed, if he will haue a wife, hee muſt goe ſeeke another, for hee ſhall neuer againe enioy her: Valentine hauing thus receiued his anſwere, hee departed and came to king Lucar, telling him all that the Indian had ſayd, which grieued him to the very heart.

Lucar hauing by his meanes cauſed Brandiffer to ſtay with him, ſent Valentine and Murgalant to raiſe the ſiege which king Pepin had layd againſt Angory. And as they were vnder ſayle, Valentine eſpying a glittering Tower, asked what it might bee? Then the Marriners deſcribed the manner and faſhion of it to him. Now they are come within the ſight of king Pepins Tents, and Murgalant hauing viewed the Chriſtians forces, found the number to be great: then ſayd Valentine, let vs ſecretly ſend to the city, to acquaint them with your comming, that to morrow morning they may iſſue out at that ſide, and we will backe them on this ſide, that none may eſcape our hands. Pacolet ſtanding by, ſaid, Let mee be the Meſſenger, for I can ſpeake their language. Quoth Murgalant, goe thy way: ſo Pacolet departed, but (he ſayd to himſelfe) by to morrow night, you will ſing another ſong. Pacolet being come to the very Gates of the City of Angory, the wardens thought him to bee ſome ſpy, wherefore they demanded of him ſaying, whither goes this fellow? he lookes as if he were ſome ſpy: 'Tis true (ſaid Pacolet) but I come not for your hurt, therefore bring me into the hoaſt of king Pepin, that I may ſpeake with my Lord *Orſon*, for I haue a matter of great import to acquaint him withall. So they brought him into the preſence of *Orſon*, who eſpying him, was right ioyous, and ſaid: How fares my brother Valentine? then Pacolet told him of all his aduentures that hee had paſſed ſince they ſaw one another, and alſo how valiantly and wonderfully hee had ouercome the Serpent, and how hee could heare no tydings of Clerimond, and told him that they were now come to beare armes againſt them, accompanied with 100000 pagans vnder the conduct of Valentine and Murgalant, and to chaſe you out of theſe confines, by the command of K. Lucar, and K. Brandiffer, but if you will be ruled by me, I will ſend the pagans ſhort home. Quoth *Orſon* doe as thou haſt ſayd, and win immortall praiſe to thy poſterity: for

ſayd

ſayd Pacolet I am bound in all duty to your Brother Valentine, but the ſeruice that I ſhall now vndertake, will highly pleaſe you: Firſt, ſtand you ſtill vpon your Guard, and in the night put all your men in readines: and for that Valentine ſhall not be ſuſpected to be in the plot, hee ſhall continue in his Tent, whilſt I caſt a ſtrong ſleepe on all the Sarazens, and then may you come vpon them and ſlay euery man. Tis good ſayd Orſon, ſo Orſon led him to king Pepin to make him acquainted with the enterpriſe, and Pacolet was royally entertained for that time. Now Pacolet, to the end there ſhould grow no miſtruſt, gaue certaine ſignes to Murgalant. Being in the City hee found out the Admirall Bruhans, and ſaluted him with great reuerence, & deliuered vnto him the meſſage which hee had brought from Murgalant, which was, that of Brandiffers part were newly arriued 100000, and Murgalant ſends you word by me, that to morrow betimes you haue your men in a readineſſe, to aſſaile the Chriſtians on the one ſide of the City, and Murgalant will aſſaile them on the other, thereby to hem them in, that not a man of them eſcape. The Admirall was glad to heare theſe tydings,, but he knew not how this ſhould come to paſſe. Pacolet took his leaue of him, and returned backe againe vnto Murgalant with ſalutations from the Admirall: ſo Murgalant gaue him great thankes for his meſſage, and Pacolet departed ſecretly to ſpeake with Valentine. When he was come, he ſaid thus vnto him, your Brother Orſon and your vncle king Pepin greete you well by mee, to whom I haue related the whole manner of your comming, becauſe I would haue them well and readily prepared: But pacolet would not let him know the plot he had in hand, for he durſt not reueale any Treaſon vnto Valentine. The night is come wherein this bloody ſtratagem is to be acted, ſo Valentine commanded the watch to be ſtrongly ſet, and would be in the watch himſelfe, but pacolet found a way to preuent him, and cauſed him to abide in the tent: In the dead time of the night, pacolet went amongſt the Pagans, and caſt ſuch a charme, that they fell aſleepe. This opportunity was not let ſlip by K. pepin, for he with his army entred the hoaſt with 60000 fighting men, and ſet fire amongſt the tents and Pauillions and killed all that reſiſted. At laſt they

came

came to the tent of *Murgalant*, who lay aſleepe in his bed, and he being ſuddenly affrighted, skipped out, and one receiued his body on a Dart, and ſo her fell downe dead.

The aſſault being giuen on the Sarazens, pacolet ſayd vnto Valentine, ſeeke to ſaue your ſelfe for the Chriſtians haue killed the watch, and entred the Hoaſt, pacolet (ſaid Valentine) thou haſt made me breake my promiſe with Brandiffer, for which I ſhall ſurely die. Feare not, quoth pacolet, for he ſhall doe thee no harme. The morrow after, Brubans ſtued out of *Angory*, and ſet vpon pepins hoaſt, who knew not what had happened. The battell grew both fierce and long: At laſt, the Admirall couched his ſpeare, and running againſt a knight of Bay, ſtroke him ſtarke dead, and after that, with his ſword he ſlew Gyrald of paris: then came he againſt Robert of Normandie, and lopt off his leg. At laſt king pepin met with him, and couching his Speare, he ran him quite through: the Pagans ſeeing the Admirall dead, retired into the City, the chriſtians followed them, but they defended themſelues ſo valiantly with ſhot, that the chriſtians were faine to forſake the wals: but by ſome other ſtratagems they won the City, putting all the Sarazens to the Sword. Within this City was great riches, which was diuided among the Souldiers.

Chap. XLVII.

How *Valentine* returned backe to *India* after the battell, and bare with him the dead body of K. *Murgalant*. And how hee heard tydings of his Father, and how *pacolet* freed the *Indian* K. and left *Brandiffer* in priſon. And how K. *Lucar* cauſed all that hundred that watched the *Indian* to be drawne to death at horſe tailes, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed ſecretly out of his hoaſt, and went to *Angory*, and of the viſion of King *pepin*, and how he went into the holy land with the twelue peeres of *France*, and what hapned. And how *Haufray* and *Henry* betrayed their father king *Pepin*, and the twelue peeres of *France*. And how the *Caliph* of *Bendas* made truce between the Indian, *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, And how *Haufray* to further his treaſon came before *Lucar* & *Brandiffer*, & how he was intrapped in his own net.

The

The City being taken by the Chriſtians, Valentine finding the body of Murgalant in the field cauſedit to be put vp, and couered with blacke. After certaine daies ſaile, they arriued where Lucar and Brandiffer were, and in mourning manner brought it before the two kings as they ſat playing at Cheſſe. Aſſoon as king Lucar ſaw Valentine, he ſaid: knight welcome home, how fareth & ſpeedeth our Forces, haue you put the Chriſtians to the worſt, and taken Pepin and his nephew Orſon? Alas (ſayd Valentine) it is falne out contrary, for we haue loſt the field and all our men are ſlaine. For B. Farin that had the whole charge of the watch, let his men ſleepe, and ſo the Chriſtians came and made hauocke of our army. Aſſoone as I got any tydings hereof, I awakened my men, hoping to ſaue them, but it was too late. In this battell is ſlaine your vncle Murgalant, whoſe body I haue here brought. This ſpectacle fretted Brandiffer at heart, that in madnes he threw away the Cheſſe-boord, and ſaid: ſurely Valentine thou wert the cauſe of this. Quoth Valentine, I returne him the lye that ſayes ſo, and I will maintaine mine innocency with my ſword. Nay (ſaid king Lucer) if he hath plotted any treaſon, hee would neuer haue come againe: then Brandiffer commanded the body to be royally interred.

This newes gladded the Indian, and hereupon gathering vp all his forces, hee iſſued out of the city. The battaile being begun, Valentine threw himſelfe into the thickeſt, ſo that none durſt ſtand before him. At laſt meeting the Indian king, he ſwote him off his horſe. Pacolet ſeeing him downe, he led him vnto Valentine, and ſo vnto the tent of king Brandiffer: when tydings came that the Indian was taken, he called vnto his men, ſaying: Follow hard and the day is our owne, ſo they entred the battell, and draue the Indian to a retrait. When Brandiffer ſaw they with drew themſelues, they followed them to the gates, where fell on both ſides a great ſlaughter. The battell laſted ſo long that it was night, and Brandiffer and Lucar betooke them to their tents, and bad that the Indian king ſhould be brought before them. When B. Lucar ſaw him, he ſaid vnto him: Traitor, the end of thy life is now at hand. The Indian made ſhift to vnderſtand him, but ſaid neuer a word.

King

King Lucar had no ſooner ended his rough ſpeech to the Indian king, but there arriued a Meſſenger, who ſayd vnto Brandiffer: I bring you ſad tydings, O king, for Pepin King of France hath taken your City of *Angory*, and put vnto the ſword man, woman, and Child. Theſe are ill tydings indeed (quoth Brandiffer) but ſeeing we haue the King of Inde in ſubiection, I hope ſhortly to free mine own Country. Then hee ſayd vnto King Lucar, Sonne we haue the king of Iude in hold, let vs make ſhort worke with him, and to morrow morning let him be hanged vp: which being done wee will ſpeed vnto Angory againſt the French, and take vengeance for theſe wrongs done vnto mee. Alſo, I haue there in a ſtrong Caſtle, the Emperor of *Greece*, and the Green knight Priſoners, who at my comming ſhall ſuffer death. Valentine being preſent, was glad to heare of his Father, ſo by a ſigne, he acquainted Pacolet that he ſhould ſhortly ſtand in need of his Art, who inwardly vowed he would find ſome meanes to releaſe them out of priſon. Alſo, the Indian King looked wiſely on Valentine, and ſaid thus to himſelfe: Curſed be that houre that thou eſcapedſt my hands, for had I put thee vnto death, theſe dangers had neuer befallen me, then King Lucar called a ſtrong guard of armed Sarazens, and ſaid vnto them, keepe well this traitor, and on the morrow he ſhall be hanged. So they tooke him and brought him into one of the Pauillions, and bound him about the middle to a poſt, and ſo left him, falling to play againe. Now Valentine called *Pacolet* vnto him, ſaying I am halfe in doubt whether Brandiffer haue my Father in hold, for if I were aſſured thereof, I would not haue daungered my body as I haue done in his ſeruice: but now is the time to be reuenged. Sir (quoth Pacolet you haue ſmall reaſon to beare him good will, therfore, if ſo you pleaſe, I will find a meanes to free the Indian King and to deliuer Brandiffer into his hands, ſo may your vncle pepin hold Angory ſtill. This quoth Valentine would bee worthy of thankes, wherefore proſecute thy Plot, that ſo I may helpe mine vncle, and deliuer my father. Pacolet hauing an eye to what he would do, after ſupper came among thoſe bundzed that had the charge of the Indian K. After they had made fire without the pauilion, Pacolet caſt them all into a dead ſleepe. Hauing ſo done, he

went to the Indian King, and ſaid: Noble king, be glad in me for I am Mahomet, and am come to ſet thee free. Thou ſhalt goe to my pallace, and beare along with thee Brandiffer, who ſhall not know whither he goeth. Alas (ſaid the Indian to Pacolet, taking him for Mahomet) it ſhould ſeeme I haue deſerued well at thy hands, when thou tookeſt ſuch paines to come downe and deliuer me from death, and mine enemies. King (ſaid pacolet) truſt in me, and beleeue the counſell of thy wife. Herewith Pacolet led him towards Brandiffer, cauſing all the watch to fall into a dead ſleepe, and ſo inchanted him that he aroſe, made him ready, and went along with the Indian king into his Pallace.

The Indian being thus ſet free, gaue thanks to Mahomet for his deliuery, then Pacolet brought him a Horſe, made him mount him, and ſet Brandiffer behind him, ſent him packing for India, and ſo took his leaue. At laſt the Indian came to the gates of his owne City, and calling the Porters was inſtantly let in: when Rozamond beheld him, ſhe ſayd: ſir, you are right welcome home, but tell mee how you came by my Father, that you haue brought him with you, is there a peace concluded? No (quoth the king) Mahomet deliuered him into my hands, and freed me from death. So by this time ended the vigour of the charme, and Brandiffer awaking, began to ſay. How came I hither? Some Deuill hath inchanted me, nay ſayd the king, Mahomet hath brought vs hither, that you may be at peace with mee. I had rather die: therefore ſet me free, that I may goe to my Hoaſt againe: not ſo, for ſince you are here, I meane to keepe you. Now the Sarazens that guarded the Indian, lie ſtill aſleepe: at the breake of day, Lucar came to the Pauilion where the Indian lay, but when the Pagans ſaw him they cry for mercy for they had loſt their priſoner. Mariets quoth Lucar your liues ſhall pay for it, ſo he cauſed them to be drawn along the ſtreets at horſe Tayles, and after hanged, whereat Pacolet laughed: but Valentine ſaid, friend I ſhall neuer be at eaſe, till I haue found out my father, whom Brandiffer keepeth in priſon. Here Valentine and Pacolet leaue the Pagans, and after trauelled to beare tydings of the Lady Clerimond.

You haue heard before, how K. Pepin took Angory, ſo now will

I

I make plaine to you the manner of a Treaſon towards him by Haufray and Henry: It happened as the king was in his bed in Angory he had a dreame to this effect: He thought he beheld a maſſe Prieſt, ſhewing vnto him diuers Reliques, beſides a ſumptuous Sepulchre, and three times this apparition troubled him: the morning being now come, hee called before him all his Barons, and declared vnto them the manner of this dreame: and ſayd vnto them, Lords I know not what may befall, but I thinke it ſome deluſion, or elſe it may be that I ſhould goe viſit the holy places without the City of Hieruſalem. Then ſpake *Orſon* I will goe with you if ſo you pleaſe, and I alſo quoth *Myllon* Daugler: after, the Twelue Peeres offred themſelues vnto him to aſſiſt him in his Pilgrimage. The king hearing them ſo forward, gaue them thankes, and calling before him Haufray and Henry, he ſaid vnto them: Haufray, you know you are my naturall ſon, but yet in ſuch a time was you gotten, when I had not one foot of land in France, wherefore it is my will that you enioy this land of Angory, therfore keepe it valiantly.

Then *Haufray* ſaid vnto Henry, brother you vnderſtand the king our Father well, do you not? He will preferre vs to ſtrange lands, as if we were not worthy to be his ſons. Now as for his young ſon Charles he promiſeth to leaue him K. of France, and we muſt bee contented with a forraigne part: therefore be ruled by mee, and Pepin ſhall neuer returne into France to eſtabliſh his heire. Wee will worke a plot to deliuer him into the hands of the Pagans, and then ſhall we be kings of France, and Emperor of Rome, all which I thirſt after. Brother quoth Henry your words are well put together, but how ſhall this thing be accompliſhed? *Haufray* ſaid I ſhall tell thee how: Go vnto king Brandiffer, and tell him, that I muſt haue his Daughter *Galazy*, and being with him, tell him that king Pepin and the twelue peeres of France do determine to goe to the holy Sepulchre: and they may be eaſily ſurprized, for they take along with them but a few in traine. Brother this will doe well, wherfore make haſt to India there ſhal you find Lucar & Brandiffer, when you haue found them acquaint them with the plot, and I will goe along with you. Do ſo, quoth Haufray, for I ſhall neuer be at quiet, till this buſineſſe bee finiſhed. Thus had they plotted

treaſon againſt their Father, who had now entred the ſeas, thinking to accompliſh their pilgrimage, Henry going along with them, and Haufray likewiſe hath taken his way towards India: ſo leaue we them, and enter into other matter.

The Caliph of Bendas, being come into the hoaſt of Brandiffer and Lucar, treated a truce for a month between them and the king of Inde, ſo appointing a day to meet thereupon, the Caliph began thus to ſay: Lords, it is vnknowne vnto you, that the Chriſtians haue wonne the Realme of Angory, wherefore I wonder that you continue here maintayning a needleſſe war, and ſuffer the enemy to grow vpon you in a place of ſuch import: therefore liſt a while to what I ſhall declare: True it is, that the king of Inde ſlew your Father Trompart, for that hee kild his vncle: this was one for another. Therefore let the Indian deliuer Brandiffer, and as for Rozamond, let her be brought and ſet betweenn the two kings, Lucar and the Indian, and if ſhe will ſtay with the Indian, let her, if ſhee will goe with Lucar, let him receiue her. This his counſell was generally accepted, and Rozamond was brought forth, whereupon the Caliph propounded the matter for which ſhee was called. Rozamond hauing heard what was ſayd, ſhe reſolued to keepe her to the Indian king, and Lucar departed away very forrowfull.

The ſame day that the Caliph made this concluſion, Haufray came vnto the hoaſt of Lucar and Brandiffer, and making haſt to their Pauillions, he ſaluted them, vnto whom Brandiffer ſayd: What wind hath driuen you hither, ſir ſayd Haufray, that I haue to deliuer craueth ſecreſie and attention. So they drew from their attendants and then Haufray ſayd, Lords, you all know that I am Son vnto Pepin K. of France, and I alſo vnderſtand, that you (ſpeaking to Brandiffer) haue a beautifull Daughter: now if it pleaſe you to giue me your Daughter in marriage, I will deliuer into your hands my father, and all the peeces of France, that haue ſo much damnified you: for know, that in the habite of Pilgrims, they haue taken their iourney to viſite the holy Sepulchre at Ieruſalem, ſlenderly accompanied. Quoth Brandiffer for theſe tydings I will giue thee my Daughter Galazy, but it muſt be vpon condition that you renounce your faith: yes (ſo. Haufray) that ſhal I do. When K. Brandiffer

differ ſaw the treachery of Haufray firſt that he would betray his father, next, forſake his Religion, he with drew himſelfe to adviſe with Lucar and the Caliph, ſaying to them, you ſee the Treaſons of this man that demandeth my daughter, how dare I truſt him that ſeeketh the death of his Father, and the ruine of the whole State of France? No, I will not make my peace with ſuch an homicide, I had rather ſee my Daughters death, then giue her to ſo vile a Traytor. After theſe words hee called to Haufray, and ſayd, ſir: I am glad of your comming, and this ſhall be your taske, you ſhall go to my Daughter and beare her this Letter from me, there paſſe away your time till we haue further leiſure to reſolue on your buſineſſe, ſir ſayd Haufray I am ready to accompliſh your demand, ſo he deliuered him the letter, and 100 men to conduct him on his way, after they were at Sea within few daies they came within ſight of the ſtrong Caſtle where *Galazie* was: when they were come vnto the gate of the Caſtle, The Porter called vnto them, ſaying: My Lords you may not enter without ſome certain token: Porter ſayd Haufray tell the Lady that we ſhall ſatisfie her, the Porter went vnto the Lady, and ſayd: Lady without the Gate ſtand a company of men that faine would enter, and as I thinke they are come from your Father. The Lady bad her Gentleman-vſher goe know what they would, and of whence they are, who did as ſhee commanded: aſſoone as ſhee vnderſtood hee came from her Father K. Brandiffer, he bound vp the Lyons and opened the Gate, ſo Haufray entred, and thought all this had beene for his good, but it fell out contrary for hee by Treaſon was entrapped. Being entred the caſtle, hee was brought before the Ladie *Galazie*, whoſe beauty euen amazed him, ſo that hee was not able to ſpeake one word. After ſome time of pauſe, he ſaluted the Lady, and ſayd vnto her, Faire Soueraigne know, that for the great renown that I haue heard of your moſt excellent beauty, I haue left my Country and paſſed the Seas, to acquaint your father with that which ſhall make him happy, and for that you ſhall finde me ſpeake nothing but truth, lo here is a Letter ſent by me from your father.

The lady taking the letter, read it: when ſhe had read it, ſhee beheld Haufray ſaying: Vaſſall I haue read thy Letter and I finde

thee a chriſtian, and that thou haſt ſold the life of thy father and the Twelue Peeres of France: all this my father certifieth by his Letters vnto me, and commandeth me, that I determine what ſhall be done vnto thee. Now for that I vnderſtand thee to bee a moſt perfideous Traytor, I ſweare by the law I profeſſe, I will neither take pitty nor merry vpon ſuch a wretch as thou art: ſo ſhee called vnto her officers, and committed him to priſon in a darke Dungeon. Haufray ſeeing what had happened, ſayd, it is a bitter marriage to mee: in ſtead of hauing my perſon, you ſhall be maſter of my priſon, and ſo hee was conueyed away forth of her preſence. Now in the ſame Dungeon, lay the Emperour of *Greece*, and the Green knight: and when they heard they ſhould haue another fellow-priſoner, the Emperour ſo ſoone as hee came in, demanded of him whence he was: Haufray ſayd, It is no matter of whence, but I am that vnhappy Haufray, Baſtard Son of K. Pepin: why quoth the Emperour, I am the Emperour of *Greece*: can you tell mee how it fareth with my Brother K. Pepin, and my two ſonnes with the reſtone of the Peeres of France: ſir ſayd *Haufray*, they are in this Country of *Angory*, and haue wonne the ſame in battell. So leaue we them in priſon, and returne to Valentine and pacolet.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How Valentine and *pacolet* came before the caſtle, and how *pacolet* raiſed vp the Deuill, to aske his counſel about the taking of the caſtle. And how *Brandiffer* brought the twelue peeres of *France* into his ſtrong caſtle, and impriſoned them. And how he beſieged the city of *Angory*. And how *Brandiffer* having knowledge that *Lucar* was a captiue in *Angory*, made meanes to *Valentine* to deliuer him upon ſufficient *Ranſome*.

AFter many daies ſaile, theſe two arriued at the Caſtle and viewed it ſtrangely, thinking it impregnable: at laſt, pacolet ſayd, ſir anon I will tell you more, ſo hee went aſide and caſt a figure, incontinently there appeared vnto him a Deuill, who ſaid vnto him: Leaue off your enterpriſe for the caſtle is not to be taken but by treaſon and ſo vaniſhed.

Suddenly

Suddenly after his departure there aroſe a great ſmoake about the caſtle, inſomuch as *V*alentine loſt the ſight of pacolet, and was driuen into an amazement. This miſt being diſperſed, pacolet came to Valentine, and ſayd: Let vs depart for there is no way to conquer this Caſtle but by treaſon: ſo they forſooke the caſtle and went towards Angory, being there they demanded tydings of King Pepin, but it was anſwered hee was gone to Ieruſalem on Pilgrimage: ſo *V*alentine reſolued to ſtay there till his vncle returned, but all in vaine, for by treaſon of Haufray, King pepin was ſurpriſed by King Brandiffer, as you ſhall heare.

King pepin being come to Ieruſalem, by the direction of certaine guides they were conducted to the holy places. During the time of their abode here in Ieruſalem, came Brandiffer the Indian king, and K. Lucar (hauing had intelligence by Haufray, as before you haue heard) accompanied with a great Hoaſt of men, and marched

ſo far that they came vnto the K. of *Sury*: being come vnto him hee did very much marueil at their comming, and after ſalutations demanded the cauſe: Then ſpake Brandiffer, Sir, know this that by a chriſtian wee are informed, that lately there is come into this holy City certaine pilgrims, the one of them is *Pepin* K. of France, the reſt are the twelue Peeres: if it be ſo we craue your aid and aſſiſtance, for they are vnto vs mortall enemies, and haue taken from me my City of *Angory*, making great ſpoyles within my Territories, wherefore we deſire you that they may be deliuered into our hands that we may proceed againſt them according to our lawes: your demand is but reaſonable (quoth the K. of Sury) therefore let all be done according to your with, for I am enemy vnto all ſuch as ſhall deriue vs and our religion: Now hearken a little what I ſhall vndertake. I wil ſend vnto the Patriarke about this matter, and if he haue any ſuch French Pilgrims, that hee preſently bring them before me. The K. of Sury ſent a meſſenger vnto the Patriarke to bring them before him, then the Patriarke went vnto the Pilgrims, and ſaid: Friends you muſt come before the King of *Sury*. Heereat Pepin grew exceeding ſad, for he thought he ſhould looſe his life, but yet he ruled a little, and I will tell you what we will doe: let vs heere make Henry our Lord, and I will wait vpon him like a Page bearing his hat and ſtaffe. *Henry* being too skilfull in treaſons denied it, ſaying heere is *Orſon* and Duke *Myllon*, more worthier then I, let them take it vpon them, quoth *Myllon* ſo you pleaſe, I ſhall do any thing: ſo they tooke their way toward the Pagan that ſent for them. D. *Myllon* tooke vpon him the perſon of the K. and the K. was his Page, and bare his hat and ſtaffe. The Patriarke after he had deliuered them to the K. departed, and the K. of Sury ſaid vnto them, it is told me you are all French-men, come as Spies and amongſt you is the King of *France*: Sir ſayd one of the company the K. of France is not here: How not heere (quoth Sury) if he doe not ſhew himſelfe openly I will commit you all to a grieuous death. Then ſpake Henry the traitor firſt, and ſaid, it is not I: At theſe words D. *Myllon* doubted treaſon, and ſaid, Sir I am the K. of France, but withall, ſuffer me to tell you a thing worthy of note: we are all Chriſtians,

and

and it is free for vs to goe ſafely, euen by your owne Lawes and Cuſtomes of your Country, paying a certaine tribute. Now this tribute is by vs dayly paid and obſerued, therefore you offer vs much wrong, to detaine vs contrary to your cuſtomes.

Say what you will (quoth Sury) but to Spies there is no ſuch priuiledges allowed: and now hee called forth Brandiffer and Lucar, and ſaid vnto them: Lords theſe be chriſtian ſpies, take them and doe with them as pleaſe you, theſe words being vttered the Pilgrims were laid hold on, and then Brandiffer ſayd, Lords, let theſe be conueyed to my ſtrongeſt caſtle, and put them into the deepeſt Dungeon: which done, let vs make haſt vnto *Angory*, and beat out all our enemies. After into France to bring that to our ſubjection, all this may eaſily be effected, ſith we haue all the Peeres thereof in captiuity, ſo that there is not a man of worth to make reſiſtance. This done, the Indian K. required that amongſt all thoſe priſoners he might haue the little one to make his dwarfe, of (which was King Pepin) his requeſt was likewiſe granted: ſo he tooke along with him K. Pepin and loued him exceedingly.

The Indian king taking his leaue, euery one of the Peeres looked pittifully on king Pepin, but durſt not ſpeake vnto him. Pepin being on his way with the Indian, began thus to lament: How vnfortunate am I among men? Alas Duke *Myllon*, it grieueth me moſt for thee, for the loue towards mee hath brought thy ſelfe in danger. But for my ſon Henry, I lay all my curſe on thee that refuſeth to releeue thy father in caſe of extreamity. Farewell *Bertha* my wife, & my yong ſon *Charles*, thy caſe is moſt dangerous, for what will not traitors attempt againſt thee? By this time is the *Indian* come home into his owne land: When the Lady Rozamond ſaw his approach, ſhe was right glad, and receiued him with much kindnes. At laſt, ſhe threw her eyes on K. pepin who was of ſmall ſtature, and demanded of the king where he had that little man. Lady ſaid the K. he was giuen me at Ieruſalem, being come thither with the K. of *France*, and the twelue Peeres.

But now let vs returne to ſpeake ſomewhat of Clerimond who was in the Court of this Indian King. The kings manner was, to ſend her euery meale of the beſt meate from his owne Table: and

one

one night at supper time called pepin vnto him for to carry her prouision, saying vnto him, Go into the great Chamber on the other side of the court, there shall you finde a foolish woman, beare this from me, pepin did as he was commanded, but when he saw her in those base rags, hee sayd vnto her: I pitty your distressed estate: when the lady heard him say so, she said: friend pitty thy selfe, let me alone, I am not what I do seeme to be: but tell mee art thou a Christian? Lady (sayd Pepin) I am, and come from the Realme of France. Then the Lady with a smiling countenance sayd: know you then K. Pepin, and his Nephew Valentine? I. quoth Pepin & his brother *Orson*, and his Father the Emperor of Greece? The Lady hearing him say so, began to shed teares, and yet spake, saying, friend, may I put trust in you? I, said king Pepin, euen as well as if I were your naturall Father, then thus: know for certainty that all that I haue done is but counterfeit, for I am a Christian and the woefull loue of Valentine, that was giuen vnto him as his wife, but I was betrayed and stolne away by the traitor K. Trompart: so then shee vnfolded the manner of all these things: when K. Pepin heard the lamentable aduentures of this Lady, he began to weepe, and said vnto himselfe these words. Ha, what trust is in this world? Alas for this poore Lady, alas for Valentine, and yet to see, it is my chance at last to finde her out in this vnlookt for aduenture: After he had ended all these lamentations, he said: Lady, now do I vnderstand whom you are, and sith you trusted mee with the secrets of your heart, giue me leaue a little also to shew you whom I am. Heere you see me, and in what shape I goe cloathed: yet know, that I am Pepin K. of *France*, and by disastrous chance I am fain into this seruitude. As for Valentine, know that he vndertaketh dangerous aduentures, and continueth still without taking any rest: Now I hauing knowledge of you, if betweene vs we can make these tydings knowne vnto him, with great ioy you may embrace each other. At these words the Lady swounded, but Pepin seeing her recouered, left her, & came vnto the K. being at Supper. So here we rest to talke any more of this matter, and returne to say somewhat of Baandiffer and Lucar who are hired in leading the twelue peeres of France to prison.

Brandiffer

Brandiffer hauing the twelue Peeres in priſon, and with them Haufray and *Henry*, the onely workers of the treaſon, came vnto his Caſtle, where hee told all the whole enterprize to his Daughter, how the twelue Peeres fell into his hands. Hauing finiſhed his tale he conueyed them into the Dungeon whereas the Emperor, the Greene knight, and Haufray lay.

Henry was much troubled that he durſt not diſcouer his mind to *Brandiffer*: for hee was the firſt that was let into the Dungeon: after him *Myllon* Daugler, who by chance fell vpon Haufray, which made him angry: Be not angry quoth *Myllon*, for there are many more to come downe after me, to whom you muſt giue place. Haufray knew after that it was D. *Myllon*, and demanded of him by what meanes hee came thither? Nay (quoth *Myllon*) I rather wonder how you came hither, for I am ſure wee left you within the City of *Angory*. Quoth the Traitor, I was taken for a Spy, and for that cauſe am I hither brought: Now, are all theſe Lords forrowing in priſon, but when Haufray vnderſtood that K. pepin was not among them, hee ſeemed outwardly exceeding glad, though in heart hee could wiſh his death. Euery one looked for nothing but death, ſaue onely *Orion*, and he bare it out comfortably, ſaying: Lords let vs yet truſt to my Brother Valentine and pacolet, who by inchantment can do much, but he little knew that the Caſtle was impregnable. *Brandiffer* hauing thus made all ſure, cald before him his daughter *Galazy*, and ſayd vnto her, I muſt depart to ſatisfie mine army, being there I ſhall meet with the Indian King and Lucar, both which will ayde mee againſt the French, that holdeth the City of Angory: therefore keepe well my priſoners, ſo hee departed. And when he came vnto his Army, he found Lucar ready, but as for the Indian K. he ſent his forces, & came not himſelfe, by reaſon that *Rozamond* was lately dead.

The two kings gathered by their forces, and tooke their way toward *Angory*, whither being come Valentine had knowledge thereof, who kept the City for K. pepin. This amazed much the Noble Valentine, when he ſaw the Tents ſo nie him: At laſt hee called pacolet vnto him ſaying, I wonder I heare not of my vncle pepin: feare not (ſaid pacolet) for ere long we will hear better newes

and

and therewithall departed from Angory, and neuer reſted vntill he came vnto the campe of K. Lucar, who eſpying him demanded of him what newes and what was become of his Maſter who ſo long time hee had ſerued? pacolet anſwered, ſir he is long ſince dead, and I am come to ſeeke a new Maſter. Quoth Lucar wilt thou ſerue mee? Yes (quoth pacolet.) Thus was he receiued into his ſeruice but hee ill rewarded his new Maſter: for the ſame night by enchantment hee caſt Lucar into ſuch a ſleepe that hee caſt him into the City of Angory. Valentine was right glad of this, and Lucar being placed before a fire the enchantment ceaſed, and he awaked. Being awaked he became ſore aſtonied to ſee himſelfe thus betraied, and at laſt pacolet at laſt ſaid vnto him: Maiſter I am at your ſeruice, haue you any thing to command me. At the which words, Lucar grew much inraged, and taking a knife gaue pacolet ſuch a wound, that he fell downe dead. Valentine ſeeing this accident, was exceeding ſorrowfull, and ſayd: ſuch another friend ſhall I neuer haue. Falſe Traitor, quoth he, thou haſt ſlaine him that was all my hope, if thou haue, thou ſhalt ſurely pay for it. Then ſayd Lucar I am glad that I haue ſlaine that Traitor.

Now Valentine went towards the dead corps, and took out of his boſome a paire of writing Tables, in which was written the whole manner of his Art. Theſe tables had pacolet euer made Valentine acquainted withall, wiſhing him, that if he out-liued him, he ſhould make great account of them, ſo Valentine put them by, and after made vſe of them. Heere would Valentine haue K. Lucar put to death, but being better aduiſed, he was ſafely kept in priſon: for if ſo be that any worthy Perſonage ſhould be taken by the Pagans, then the body of Lucar ſhould ſerue for ranſome of the other. Thus Valentine cauſed the body of pacolet to be interred in honourable manner, whoſe death was much bewailed of all.

The next morning there aroſe an out-cry throughout the army, that Lucar was gone no man knew how: Amongſt the reſt, Brandiffer made great lamentation, till one told him that hee was in Angory and how he had ſlain pacolet. Brandiffer was glad pacolet was ſlaine, but ſorry for Lucar: at laſt calling to him a meſſenger, he ſent to Valentine to aske him if he would deliuer Lucar for King

pepin,

Pepin, or the Emperor, or *Orſon*, or any other of the twelue peeres of France, the Meſſenger departed on his way with theſe conditions and commiug to the City of Angory, deſired to ſpeake with Valentine: after ſalutations on both parts, he declared the meſſage from king Brandiffer. Valentine hearing the effect of his meſſage, was much amazed, and ſaid to the Meſſenger how commeth it to paſſe, that *Brandiffer* can make chopſe of all theſe valiant men, how became they his priſoners? Quoth the Meſſenger I think it is not vnknowne, how that K. Pepin accompanied with the twelue Peeres of France, not long ſince went to Ieruſalem, and hauing amongſt them one traytor, was deliuered into the hands of Brandiffer, and by him taken in Ieruſalem, and committed to priſon, wherefore hauing thus related vnto you the truth, ſay, will you change one priſoner for another, Meſſenger, I ſhall giue anſwere to thee anon. ſo entring into the Hall, he aſſembled vnto him all his counſell: ſaying to them: Thus it is, that for our priſoner Lucar, we may haue deliuered vs, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Vncle K. Pepin: now in this caſe let vs reſolue what is to be done. The Lords replyed, you are moſt bound to your naturall Father, and therefore we adiudge it moſt fitteſt to releaſe him.

Lords (qd. Valentine) you haue well aduiſed, but yet I am determined to do otherwiſe, for you all know, that my mother was wrongfully baniſhed, and in her exile brought mee forth and my brother in the Forreſt of Orleance, where we might both haue been deuoured of beaſts, if mine Vncle king Pepin had not taken mee vp. Thus hee nouriſhed and brought me vp vnto mans eſtate: after he made me knight, and with beſtowed vpon me many preferments, therefore I ſay, theſe things conſidered, my will is, that my vncle be ſet free from king Lucar, he being thus at liberty, we will ſhortly worke the freedome of my father, and all the reſt. When the Barons had heard the wiſedome of Valentine, they agreed all with one voice, that hee had nobly ſpoken. Then called they vnto them the meſſenger of Brandiffer, and ſaid, friend, returne this anſwere to thy maiſter: tell him that I ſhall willingly yeeld the body of K. Lucar, vpon condition that he deliuer vnto vs the body of king pepin, ſo after due reuerence done the Meſſenger departed.

Being

Being returned home, he deliuered his Meſſage as Valentine had deliuered to him, wher vpon Brandiffer ſwore be the gods he ſhould haue his requeſt.

CHAP. XLIX.

How *Myllon Daugler* (who was taken for the king of *France*) was deliuered out of priſon, in ſtead of K. *Lucar*. And how *Valentine* and the Duke *Myllon* iſſued out of the City of *Angory*, and wan the battell from the *Sarazens*. And how king *Pepin* was deliuered in change, for the king of *Indies* marſhall: and left *Angory*, and returned into *France* to ſuccour his Wife.

BRandiffer vnderſtanding Valentines mind, he ſuddenly diſpatched other Meſſengers to his daughter *Galazie* which kept the ſtrong Caſtle, willing her to deliuer vnto theſe meſſengers the K. of France, and let all the reſt alone. The Mayden hearing her Fathers mind, readily obeyed, calling before her the Jaylor of the priſon, and commanded him to call forth the K. of France. The Jaylor went vnto the priſon calling for the K. of France, for I am commanded to ſet him at liberty. Duke Myllon hearing him ſay ſo, could not ſo ſatisfie himſelfe, but in doubting manner ſayd: I am heere, wherefore doe you call me forth, if it be ſo that I am the firſt muſt ſuffer death, I am ready to lay it downe to maintaine my religion. Sir (qd. the Jaylor) it is no ſuch matter, for you are to be deliuered body for body, to Ranſome another Pagan King which reſteth in captiuity amongſt the Chriſtians. When Henry heard theſe words, he repented him that he had denyed to take vpon him the perſon of the king. Thus D. Myllon tooke his leaue with teares: the Emperor of *Greece* ſaid vnto him: aboue all, I pray remember me to my ſon Valentine, and me to (quoth *Orſon*) and tell him in what miſery we lie, requeſting him either quickly to worke our deliuery, or we are not able to endure our liues. Myllon comforted them all he might, and ſaid vnto them: Lords, I will neuer returne into France till I ſee you at liberty, and ſo he took his way. Being out of priſon, he went to the Lady *Galazie*, and did vnto her reuerence, which ſhe kindly

accepts,

accepted, and commended him to his fortunes: ſo the D. goeth along with the Meſſengers that were ſent for the King of *France*. When they were come before *Brandiffer*, he ſaid vnto him: King, I would haue you know wherefore I ſent for you, and to that end, I haue appointed thoſe meſſengers that brought you hither, to conduct you into the City of *Angory* to Valentine, and in your ſtead to ſend me back my ſon Lucar, as he hath promiſed. Sir (quoth the D.) all this ſhall be effected to your will, and if hee will not deliuer K. Lucar, according to your expectation, I ſhall willingly come againe and yeeld to your mercy. Royally ſpoke (quoth *Brandiffer*) I aske no more. So the D. tooke leaue and departed with the Meſſengers towards *Angory*. After few daies they arriued, where they had free acceſſe to the Pallace where Valentine lay: being come in ſight of one another, they kindly embraced: after Duke Myllon tooke Valentine aſide, and related vnto him the whole courſe of his action and how King Pepin was led away by the Indian king, who knew not who he was, and how hee had taken vpon him the kings name, onely to ſhield him from danger. When Valentine heard this, he thanked him for this deed, and began to recount what a benefit had hapned to him, that he was deliuered and the reſt left in bonds, for by the true loyalty to your Soueraigne, you are eſcaped from danger. Valentine hauing ended this diſcourſe he cauſed K. Lucar to be brought before him, to whom he thus ſayd: King Lucar, for this time you are ſet at liberty, but if euer you happen againe into my hands, I ſhall remember you for the death of my friend Pacolet, whom you haue ſlaine: theſe words being ended, he deliuered him vnto the meſſengers: now was Lucar deliuered, and the D. *Myllon* reſtored in his roome. Valentine hauing gathered more ſtrength, by adding vnto his powers the Dukes company: they gathered all their ſcattered troopes vp into battell array, and with the number of 50000 fighting men, they iſſue out of the City vpon the Enemy. Brandiffer hearing hereof, made vp againſt him, accompanied with 24. Kings his attendants, all holding them their Chiefe Lord, but their number was ſo infinite, that the Chriſtians could not come neere to doe them any harme.

Then

Then Valentine reſolued to giue a new on-ſet vpon the pagans, and couragiouſly heartening his men, he let vpon that part wherein was Brandiffer and king Lucar. In the thickeſt of this battell, an Admirall (who was Lord of Caſſidon) eſpying a French-man making hauocke with his Sword amongſt the pagans, hee made towards him, and hitting him with his Axe, he claue his head in two peeces: hauing newly done this deed, he was eſpyed by another French Caualier, who making towards this Admirall, in the preſence of Myllon Daugler, he ſmot him ſtarke dead: for the which act of valour Myllon knighted him, and ſaid among them all, that he that won valour ſhould receiue the like reward. In this manner continued the battell all that day, euen till the Sun-ſet. At laſt they ſtroue on each part which ſhould ſound retrait firſt, but neither ſide would yeeld, ſo that the fight continued all night, till the next morning, making great fires to giue them light. At breake of day, the battell began a freſh in moſt fierce manner, that blood ran downe as water in channels.

Valentine and D. Myllon behaued themſelues right valiantly, for on euery ſide they beate downe both horſe and man. But Valentine was too forward, for hee entred ſo farre into the enemies Campe that he came very neere the ſtandard of Brandiffer. Being there, the Indian Admirall eſpyed him, who ran ſo fiercely at him, that he ſlew Valentines horſe vnder him, who perceiuing himſelfe vnhorſt lightly got vpon his feet, and with his Sword he hewed out a paſſage, but he could not haue eſcaped, had not D. Myllon by chance releeued him with a freſh horſe: So Valentine retyred himſelfe out of the battell to refreſh his tyred limbes. When the Indian Marſhall ſaw their ſide had the worſe, he by his policy withdrew his forces, and in time ſtole out of ſight, ſo that at laſt they betooke them to their heeles, and ran away.

Valentine perceiuing it, told D. Myllon thereof, ſo they determined, that Valentine and his Troopes ſhould ſet vpon the Marſhall, which they did, and fell vpon the Indians in ſuch furious manner, that they vpon the firſt aduenture brake their battell array. The Marſhall ſeeing thought to haue fled, but Valentine meeting him at this aduantage, lent him ſuch a rap with his Speare, as both

both horſe and man fell to the earth. Being on the ground the ſouldiers would haue killed him, had not Valentine charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the cuſtody of foure valiant knights.

In this bickering there were many priſoners of account ſurpriſed and taken, all which Valentine ſent into Angory to be kept in ſafety By this time of the day Brandiffer and Lucar knew that they had the worſe, but they could not make reſiſtance. At laſt, they reſolued to returne againe into their own Countries and reunite their forces afreſh. So wrapping vp their Enſignes, they took their flight towards the Sea-coaſt: and the Chriſtians followed after, killed all that withſtood them Of al the Pagans multitudes that went into the field, there eſcaped but 100 perſons. They being gone, the Chriſtians rifling their tents, found ineſtimable treaſure, and hauing ſo done they returned to Angory, to reſt their tyred limbes.

After the Chriſtians had won the battell, and giuen buriall to the dead, Valentine commanded the priſoners to be brought before him. Amongſt the reſt was the Marſhall of India, of whom he demanded if he would forſake his Mahometry? The Marſhall anſwered that he would ſooner forſake his life, Then D. *Myllon* demanded of what country he was? he ſaid, I am a Marſhall of Inde, and one whom the king loueth. Quoth D. Myllon vnto Valentine, we are made happy in this priſoner, for in exchange of him we ſhal releaſe K. Pepin who was led away by the Indian king to be his Dwarfe, when we were taken priſoners at Ieruſalem. Then they demanded of him, if the king had not in his poſſeſſion a Chriſtian of low ſtature? yes quoth he, there remaineth ſuch a one in his Court, but not as his priſoner, and thither was he brought when the twelue Peeres of France were taken in Ieruſalem. Marſhall qu. Valentine if it is he after whom we enquire, wherefore let him be brought hither, and deliuered to vs, and you ſhall be ſet at liberty, for he is a page whom I euer loued, attending vpon my perſon. At theſe words the Marſhall reioyced, & ſent letters to the Indian K. The meſſenger being diſpacht, he brought letters to the Indian K. when he had read them, he was willing to change, (for hee knew

not that it was K. Pepin) and calling before him, he then ſaid: Friend, we giue you free liberty to depart my Country, for my Marſhall being taken amongſt the Chriſtians, ſhall be furrendred in your ſtead. K. Pepin thanked him, and hauing taken his leaue of the K. he ran vnto the Lady Clerimond, and ſaid, Lady take good heart, for I am ſet at liberty, and I will ſend Valentine vnto you, who will ſoone worke your releaſe. The Lady hearing this was very ioyfull, & Pepin departed with the meſſenger towards Angory.

After ſome few daies they arriued there, where the Frenchmen ſpared for no coſt to ſhew their loues to K. Pepin, and at laſt Valentine came and ſayd, vncle we had good hap in taking the Marſhall, for we haue by that meanes procured your liberty. Nephew (ſaid K. Pepin) you aboue all men haue moſt cauſe to reioyce, for I bring you the happieſt newes that euer you heard, and this it is: Faire Clerimond, whom you ſo long haue loſt, is now found, and by me ſendeth you hearty commendations: then he related her miſfortunes, and how ſhe had demeaned her ſelfe to ſhun the loue of the Indian King. Valentine hearing this ioyfull tydings, bee vttered theſe words; Deere Lady, thou haſt bought my Loue at too deare a rate, and curſed I if I prooue falſe, and for tryall hereof I will either purchaſe thy freedeme, or looſe mine owne life. This ſpeech and other affaires being ended, the Marſhall was delinered. Then Valentine betooke him to his Chamber to try the Tables that he took out of Pacolets boſome when he was ſlaine, and found euery thing ſet downe, to fall out iuſt as it was now come to paſſe, and taking vnto him pen, inke, and paper, he wrote downe what there he found, and ſowing it into his doublet (for feare of looſing) it ſtood him in great ſtead after for the ſafeguard of his life, as hereafter will appeare.

K. Pepin being reſident in Angory, newes was brought him from his wife Berthe, that all France was doubtfull of his life, & of the twelue Peeres of France, becauſe they heard they were taken Priſoners by the Pagans at Ieruſalem. This report running for currant throughout France, hath cauſed Arthur K. of Brittain, with a puiſſant hoaſt to enter the kingdoome, & ſo to win the Crowne of France by violence. Alſo the ſayd Arthur hath committed to exile

your

your yong ſon Charles. When K. Pepin had heard theſe tydings, he grew wonderfully diſtempered, and preſently called together all his Barons, and ſate in counſell what was requiſite to be done in ſuch a deſperate plot. At laſt it was reſolued, that K. Pepin in perſon ſhould depart into his owne land, to ſuppreſſe the Vſurper, which he accordingly did, and comming vnto Valentine he began to ſpeak vnto the K. Faire Vncle, it were moſt requiſite that I tarry here to gather new forces to reſcue my father and the Twelue Peeres of *France*. Do ſo (quoth K. Pepin) and if it ſo fall out that I ouercome, I will furniſh you with freſh ſupplies againſt the Pagans, that you ſhall with more eaſe compaſſe what you intend to doe.

Chap. L.

How *Valentine* vnder the ſhape of a Phiſition went into *India*, to ſee and ſpeake with the faire *Clerimond*. And how *Valentine* rode away with her, & how the K. of *Britaine* was giuen to king *Pepin* by treaſon. And how *Valentine* tooke the ſtrong caſtle, and deliuered his father the Emperor, & all the reſt of the priſoners. And how the *Emperor*, *Orſon*, & the Green knight, kept a ſtrong garriſon in this caſtle, & how *Hanfray* and *Henry* compaſſed the death of their *Father*. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orſon*, & the Green knight left the caſtle, & came to the ſuccour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the chriſtians iſſued out of the city of *Angory*, and bid battell to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly ſlew his owne father. And how *Myllon Daugler* returned into *France*, and *Valentine* and *Orſon* into *Greece*.

YOu haue heard already, that K. Pepin brought newes vnto Valentine of the Ladie Clerimond, which hauing heard, it would not out of his mind: at laſt he reſolued to paſſe from *Angory* to India, accompanied with one Squire, and in the ſhape of a phiſition, he went to Sea with the Indian Marchants: being arriued he lay in the City at an Inholders houſe, till his gowne and other habiliments were in a readineſſe. At his firſt entrance in this Inne, the hoaſt asked him what he was, he ſaid a phiſition, & can cure any manner of diſeaſe. The hoaſt

beleeued him, and his Squior ſerued him as his Apothecary or Clarke. In this manner lying there about ſome three daies, he called his Hoaſt to him, and deſired him to get a man to go about the City to make knowne his Art, and ſee who needeth help that he may cure them, for I faine would get ſomething to defray my charge while I lie in your houſe, but in the meane ſpace rather then you ſhall miſtruſt me, I will leaue you a good pawne: Marry (quoth the hoaſt) with all my heart. I accept your gage: So Valentine deliuered him a rich mantle, furred quite through with coſtly Furres, and bad him bring before him that party that ſhould make knowne his Art. The Hoaſt went out and brought him a ragged fellow who had not any thing to hang vpon him: Valentine yet was glad of ſuch a fellow as this, and new cloathed him from head to foot, and ſaid vnto him, my friend, go thy wayes into the City, and cry about the ſame that there is come a Phiſition that can heale all manner of diſeaſes, euen mad men or Women hee will vndertake the cure.

This fellow did as he was commanded, and paſſed from place to place to publiſh this Doctors skill. At the laſt theſe tidings came to the king, becauſe he had giuen out that he could recouer mad folkes to their former ſenſes: So the K. bearing good will to the Lady Clerimond ſent for this Phiſition, although he had before him many Cripples, blind, lame, and crooked, at his lodging, but he left them all and came vnto the king, for there lay the marke at which he aymed. Being come before the K. he did his obeyſance, in the name of the great God Iupiter: and the K. ſaid vnto him, ſir you be welcome to my Court, firſt dine, and then I ſhall tell you further the cauſe of my ſending for you. The K. being ſet and ſerued, made Valentine alſo to be richly attended, and dinner being done, ſaid vnto him: Sir, I haue a beauteous Lady in this pallace, whom I would make my Queene, for I loue her dearely: ſhe would by no meanes conſent, vntill the tearme of one yeare was expired: I granted her to forbeare that yeare as ſhe demanded, but at the end, ſhe was poſſeſſed with a Lunacy, inſomuch that none durſt come within her reach: ſometimes ſhe whiſtles, anon ſhe cryeth out in a pitifull manner: another while ſhe laugheth, & then ſhe falleth in-

to

to a flood of teares, ſo that my heart is ouercharged with ſorrow for her: now if your skill will extend it ſelfe to cure her, I will giue you more wealth then thou canſt aske: for my wife *Rozamond* being dead, I would make her Queene of India. My Lord (qd *Valentine*) feare not but ſhe ſhall doe well: for ſhe is the harder to be cured, for that it hath ſeized her ſo long. Againe, I muſt be with her all night, to marke the manner of her fits: you ſhall (quoth the K.) haue one appointed to bring you thither, but looke to your ſelfe leaſt ſhe harme you.

Then one who waited on the lady, guided Valentine to her window: naw goe thy way and leaue me alone. When Valentine beheld her in this deſperate caſe, he ſayd alas my loue, you haue bought me deare, as I haue you, but by the Gods I ſweare, I ſhall neuer returne againe to France till I haue you along with me, or heere loſe my life. The Lady beheld him fearefully, & whatſoeuer came firſt to hand ſhee threw at him, which much amazed Valentine. Then ſaid Valentine is this true madnes, or but faygned? Deere loue (quoth he) tell me the truth, I am *Valentine* your Loue, for whom I haue ſuffered all this damnage, thinke on the brazen head that you gaue me, nor of my brother *Orſon* that had the ſtring cut in his mouth, nor how you were ſtolne away by the Enchanter *Adrimaine*. When the Lady had heard this, ſhe fell into a ſwound for ioy, and being againe recouered, ſhe ſayd; alas my loue, how many dangers haue we paſſed through? you for me, I for you: and now behold for you, in what baſeneſſe I haue carried my ſelfe, for thee: Lady, loue dearely bought is the ſweeteſt. By this time the Trumpets ſounded to bring vp the kings meate for Supper, ſo that he ſaid vnto the Lady: My loue I will goe into the Pallace, but after Supper I will come againe, for the K. knoweth not but I am a Phiſition, and hath ſent for me to heale you, the Lady bad him go. Being come into the Pallace, ſo ſoon as the K. ſaw him, he demanded of him if he could heale the Lady? (Yes (quoth Valentine) to morrow you ſhall heare her ſpeake as diſcreetly as euer ſhe did. The K. was ſo ioyfull thereat, that he gaue vnto him a rich Mantle all beſet with precious ſtones, and cauſed him to ſit downe at his owne Table. After Supper Valentine ſaid vnto the king, it is

neceſſary I haue a fire all this night in the chamber where my patient is, for ſhe will be extreame ſicke all this night. Well, qd. the king, let al things be done ſpare, for no coſt. Now Valentine taketh his way toward the chamber of faire Clerimond, with one who carried wood to make this fire withall, which being done, hee willed euery one to depart, ſaue onely his ſquier, then Valentine ſhut all the doores and windowes, and ſaid vnto Clerimond: Sweet Lady, now may we embrace at our pleaſure, and caſting his eye aſide, he eſpyed the Horſe of wood, and asked her whoſe it was, who anſwered Pacolets, then ſayd Valentine let vs hence immediately, whereunto ſhe conſented.

Valentine being ſomewhat acquainted with Pacolets Horſe, mounted him with Clerimond, and his Squire, in a Moone-ſhine

night, and with great expedition haſted vnto the City of Angory, being come thither Valentine cauſed the gates thereof to be opened

and

and there was great ioy for the Lady Clerimond. The next morning Valentine cauſed her to be clad in rich habiliments, and married her. By this time the king knew of her eſcape, and grew frenzy, and ſaid: Ha, thou falſe Enchanter haſt thou thus deceiued me? if thou fall once againe into my hands, I will quickly bereaue thee of thy life, and ſo he cauſed purſuit to be ſent after Valentine but all in vaine, for they found him not: Heere leaue we them. Now I proceed to tell you of K. Pepin how he haſted into France to the ſuccour of Berthe his wife, and to chaſtiſe the Uſurper. The K. of Britaine not thinking what would happen, ſtrengthened himſelfe with all the forces he could make, and ſent out proclamation, that all that could beare armes ſhould aſſiſt him into *France*. Hereupon Queene Berthe with her young ſon Charles fled to Lyons to ſeeke ſuccour: At the ſame time liued a worthy and truſty Earle of Anioy, who fauouring the Queene, and pitying her diſtreſſe, fortified his Caſtle againſt the Britaines, to whom the Queene ſent 4000 Horſe to keepe the paſſage. At laſt the king of Britaine bad the Earle giue him paſſage into *France*, but he anſwered no. Hereupon there was appointed a band of Soldiers, to lay ſiege to Argiers, but the Earle kept cloſe within the City, and would not iſſue out thereof. During this ſiege was king Pepin come to Paris, and there was ioyfully receiued: when the Queene vnderſtood hee was at Paris ſhee haſted vnto him, and when ſhe came before him in teares ſhe ſaid: Deere Lord, reuenge vs on this Uſurper. Lady (quoth the king) feare it not. So calling about him his counſellors and men of war, he made haſt to furniſh vp his companies, and many there were that voluntarily offered themſelues to doe the king any ſeruice. By this time the king of Britaine heard that K. Pepin was comming againſt him with a great Army, which feared him, and not without cauſe. But ſee what followed, for his owne friends betrayed him to K. Pepin, onely to ſaue their own ſtates, and make their peace the better with the K. So reſoluing hereupon, on a night they came to him lying in his bed, and led him perforce before King Pepin, who preſently cauſed his head to be ſmitten off within the City of paris. Now thought they that betrayed him all was well: but the K. afterwards ſeized all their Lands into his owne hand.

Now was Valentine much troubled in mind, how he ſhould free the Emperor his Father from impriſonment, for he knew well that the Caſtle was not to be won by war or policie, nor by any thing, but by Treaſon: At laſt he reſolued on a ſubtle plot, & thus it was: He put to Sea twelue Ships, manned with 2000 men, and laden with all mannur of riches, as precious ſtones, and ſilkes, and thus as Marchants arriued they, before this ſtrong Caſtle.

Valentine tooke vpon him the ſhape of a Marchant, ſetting a rich Crowne on his head, and ſaid vnto his men: be you all priuately armed within the ſhips, ſo that none of you be ſeene, if the Sarazens come aboord, put them to death. Then comming toward the Caſtle gate with the Crowne on his head, the Porter ſaid what bring you hither, friend ſaid Valentine I am a Marchant going into Spaine, and hauing many rich commodities, I heard ſay that I might not paſſe without a tribute, on paine of life. Said the Porter, I will goe to my Lady and bring you an anſwere, ſo he went to Galazy, and told his meſſage, the Lady vnderſtanding there was ſuch precious Jewels aboord, ſhe ſaid to her Seneſchall: Go and receiue the tribute due to me of the Marchant, and take along with you a ſufficient company of Souldiers, leſt they ſhould offer you injury. He did as he was commanded, and comming to the ſhips, they found ineſtimable Jems, inſomuch as they were raviſhed therewith, ſo they taking the value of the tribute due to the Lady, ſuddenly the Chriſtians that lay hid in the ſhip ſet vpon them and ſlew them. Then Valentine ſaid vnto them, except we goe forward, in this enterprize, we ſhal neuer gaine the Caſtle, wherefore he cauſed 50 of his men to put on the Sarazens gownes ouer their Armors, and ſo lading themſelues with ſilkes and precious ſtones, tooke their way towards the Caſtle.

The Porter tyed by the Lyons, let down the draw-bridge, and thirſting after ſome great reward, went beyond his bounds, inſomuch as Valentine led him to the ſhips, being come Valentine ſhewed him their dead bodies, and ſaid: I will make you like one of theſe, if you giue me not paſſage into this Caſtle, ſir (qd. the Porter) I ſhall do it. Why then qd. Valentine I will reward thee. Come ſaid the Porter, and bring all thoſe men whom you haue clad in the ba-

bite

bite of Sarazens, for they cannot be knowne from them in the caſtle, and let them enter one by one, which they did: ſo beeing entred, the Porter ſhewed them a ſecret Poſterne, which Valentine hauing gotten, cauſed all the dores to be ſet open, then winded he his horne at the which all thoſe in the ſhips hasted vnto him. Then he entred the Chamber of the Lady *Galazie*, who was aſtonied therat, but he ſaid, Lady, feare not, for I haue ventured the Seas to haue a ſight of your royall preſence, then ſhe bad him welcome, and highly feaſted him. Valentines men hauing entred the Caſtle, with their ſhouts ſo affrighted the Lady: that in weeping manner ſhee ſayd vnto him, Courteous knight, ſaue my Virginity. Lady (ſaid he) feare not, for there is none that dares attempt any diſhonour towards your perſon. By this time al the Pagans within the Caſtle were ſlain, and Valentine hasting vnto the Dungeon, did breake it open, and cryed out aloud, all you that be aliue, come forth. Orſon knowing his voice, replyed: Brother, you are welcome, how came you hither. *Valentine* ſayd I am come to ſet you at liberty. At theſe words, the Emperor fell into a ſwoond, but *Orſon* ſuddenly recouered him. Then came they out of the Dungeon, in ragged clothes, and ill coloured faces: but the Chriſtians reuelled for the ſpace of 7. daies in the Caſtle, and *Orſon* falling in loue with *Galazie*, after the death of Fezon marryed her, by whom he had a ſon (named *Orſayre*) who after held the Empire at Conſtantinople.

Theſe affaires being thus brought to an end, a counſell was called, what was beſt to be done: at laſt they reſolued to leaue a Garriſon to reſiſt the Enemy: Some ſayd it was fitting that Haufray and Henry ſhould vndertake this taske: but Haufray replyed, not we, for we are determined to go for *France* to ſerue our Father. Md. *Orſon* if you be ſo reſolued, we haue ſmall reaſon to weep for your departure, for there is nothing but treaſon in you. At theſe words Haufray & Henry were diſpleaſed, but they durſt not ſhew it. At laſt, it was reſolued that the Emperor ſhould take his reſt, and his Son *Orſon* and the Greene knight ſhould remaine there to defend the Caſtle, whilſt *Valentine* with the reſt addreſſed themſelues for Angory. Now will we look into the treaſon of Haufray & *Henry* who being come into France, laid a plot to take away the life

of

of their Father, of little Charles his ſon, and Berthe the Queene. Being come to *Paris*, the king royally feaſted them, and after demanded what newes of the Emperor, Valentine, *Orion*, and the reſt. Qd. the traitors, they were all ſlaine in a battell at *Angory*, at which the king wared wondrous ſad. After this they poyſoned the K. and Queene. Now little Charles was ſtill liuing, who (as the gods would haue it) hapned vnder the ſafe keeping of Myllon Daugler.

The king and Queene being both thus treacherouſly poyſoned, the Two Traitors ſeemed to be exceeding ſorowfull, but D. Myllon Daugler being a man of valiant and couragious ſpirit, forthwith cauſed a counſell to be holden, wherin he would haue crowned young *Charles* K. of France, but Haufray and Henry by bribes ſo corrupted the Lords that Charles was held too yong: Herevpon D. Myllon was committed vnto priſon, for ſtanding on the Childs part, and *Charles* held as a kitchen boy.

A little after, it hapned that Haufray commanded *Charles* to turne a ſpit, but the Boy being full of Maieſty tooke vp the ſpit & felled him vnto the earth. At this, out ſtept Henry, thinking to ſmite the child, but hee being ready to receiue him, gaue him ſuch a bore on the eare, that the bloud iſſued out of his mouth. Then Haufray commanded his men to lay hold vpon him, but there came a knight which tooke *Charles* by the hand and conueyed him to *Paris*. The traitors perceiuing Charles was gone, made out after him but he could not be found. Herevpon D. *Myllon* told his wife thereof, who was ſiſter to charles. The Lady could not behold the ſame for teares, but vowed that they ſhould dearely pay for theſe Treaſons, and forthwith cauſed letters to be written into *Angory* vnto Valentine and the Twelue Peeres of France. Theſe Letters came firſt into the hands of Valentine who could not chooſe but weepe at this act of Villany: the Lords perceiuing his teares, asked the cauſe, he anſwered king pepin & the queene are dead, and as for charles, the two accurſed brothers, Haufray & *Henry*, haue chaſed him out of the Countrey, impriſoned D. Millon, & all that held on yong charles his ſide: theſe are the contents of theſe letters, and the lady that ſendeth them, requireth help to apprehend theſe rebels

Theſe

These sad tydings put them to their wits end, & lying betweene two extreames, knew not which way to take, for Brandiffer was daily expected with an Army of many thousands. At last Valentine sayd, Ere to morrow night I will let free D. *Myllon*, or else my skill shall deceiue me: at which they laughed heartily, but Valentine departed, and with pacolets horse he suddenly arriued at paris, where by his Art he opened the gates, & released all the prisoners. and being shewed the Chamber where D. *Myllon* was, he entred the same who being fast asleepe, he awaked him and said: Sir, I am Valentine which am come to set you free. Then he mounted him on his horse, and bad him not speak, for he was to passe through the ayre. The D. prayed him to passe by the castle of Angier, that he might but see his Wife, which he did, and and being come to the Lady thereof, who presently ran and kissed him, demanding of him whither he went? Lady qd. he, I goe to fight against the Infidels, to bring home the twelue Peeres of *France*, with an army to ouerthrow Haufray and Henry, & to succour Charles. Hauing refreshed themselues with meat, they set forwards towards *Hungary*. Being come, they came before all the Barons, who were much astonied at Valentines Art, greatly desiring to learn it, but he would teach it no man. Now was Brandiffer with his hoast come within a mile of *Angory* and there planted his siege. The Citizens hearing hereof, shut vp their gates, drew vp their bridges, and after got on the Walls lying a month together, without, making any resistance.

The Emperor hearing that Brandiffer had begirt *Angory* with so huge an army, resolued to leaue the strong castle to the guard of a knight. So the Emperor, Orſon, & the green knight, took shipping, accompanied with a 1000 souldiers, being at Sea, they saw a great fleet of ships comming to them: & at last they found it to be a Pagan with 10000 men going to the succour of Brandiffer: the Christians longing to fight with the pagans, fell vpon them so that their chanced a bloudy battell: great valor was shown on both sides, but they knew not whether the victory would incline. At last the Pagan Admirall encountring a Christian knight, tumbled him ouer ship-boord: *Orſon* standing by him grew angry, & taking

taking his Axe ſtruck him ſtarke dead. This deed ſo diſcouraged the Pagans, that they withdrew themſelues all that night ready to flight, hauing loſt 15 tall ſhips, and 4000 men. Then the Empe-ror ſayd, Lords let vs arme our ſelues with ſuch weapons as heere we haue ſeized from the Pagans, which they preſently did, but this enterpriſe was fatall, for the Emperor was ſlaine by his own ſon Valhotine, who tooke him for an Infidell, as hereafter you ſhall heare. But here they hoyſe ſaile againe, and at laſt arriued in Angory.

After a months ſiege Valentine ſent a defiance to Brandiffer, offering him battell. The Chriſtians diuide their battell into Ten ſquadrons, whereof D. Myllon was their Generall: the ſecond Sampſon of Orleance, the third Earle of Vandoſme, the Fourth Earle of Champagne, the fift Quintine of Normandy: the firt the D. of Burgoyne, the ſeauenth the Earle of Dampmartin, the eight the Earle of Aſſerue, the ninth the Marſhall of Conſtantinople, the tenth was Valentine who added courage vnto all the reſt. Being in order, they iſſued out of the City to aſſaile Brandiffer, who had deuided his army into Fifteene ſquadrons, and that ſquadron which had the leaſt commander was a king. At the ioyning of theſe battels, a certaine Pagan (that neuer before had been in wars) couched his ſpeare in reſt, and would be the formoſt man, but Valentine thinking to coole his pride, ran againſt him, and ſtroke him down dead. Then they fell to it pellmell, wherein the Chriſtians behaued themſelues valiantly. The Indian king entring the battell, made very much ſlaughter, but Valentine meeting him, gaue him ſuch a Counterbuffe, that he ſet him beſide his horſe.

At this preſent the Chriſtians got the better, and cauſed the Infidels to giue ground, but there came in a Sarazen Captaine with 30000 men, and continued the battell more hotter then before. By this time K. Lucar lighted on the Indian K. and lent him ſuccour. Now the Chriſtians began to retire, inſomuch that they had been forced to a ſhameſull flight, had not two ſtout Knights arriued in Angory with 700 men at Armes (the which (lately had come from the holy Sepulchre, & ſuffered much miſery) entred the field. The one of them brought into France the daughter of a rich admirall cal-

led

led Claridine and caused her to be baptized. The name of the one was Reynard of Province, the other Millon of *Dyon*. At their approach the Pagans was much discomfited; for Myllon of Dyon at his first encounter, smote B. Lucar starke dead, and at the next another B. called Rubres, which accident much amazed *Brandiffer*. At another part of the battell rushed in *Reynard*, and slew many of of them. Valentine wondred at these two knights of Chivalry, and comming toward them, said: Lords you are welcome, I pray you what are you, or by what chance came you hither? Friend (qd *Reynard*) we are Lords of France, and lately come from the Holy Sepulchre, who hearing of these wars, we thought it requisite to defend you against the Pagans. I am called Reynard Lord of Province, and my companion is called *Myllon* of Dyon. Quoth Valentine once againe heartily welcome, for Myllon Daugler is here, and all the Peeres of France, so they joyntly rushed afresh into the Battell. All this while the Indian B. had a spleene at Valentine for his last disgrace, and finding him out, accompanied onely with three other kings, they so encountred Valentine, that they did smite him and his horse to the ground. Being downe, he quickly recovered, and drawing out his sword defended himselfe therewith, but with much danger. At last D. Myllon, Sampson, and *Gervais*, came unto his succour getting a fresh horse for him. Valentine being mounted made his course against the Indian B. againe, and striking him down, took from him his shield which he kept (for her had lost his owne. This ended, Tydings come that a great fierte of *Sarazens* was comming neere unto the Haven. Hereupon Valentine sayd, Lords let us presently goe and strengthen the Passages, so Valentine and the D. Myllon of Dyon, went unto the Haven. But these were all friends and Christians, amongst whom was his Father the Emperor of Greece, of whom you shall heare more at large.

The Emperor having landed his men, Valentine saluted him with his speare in his rest. The Emperor (who bare the shield of a Sarazen, unknowne) encountred with his son. At last Valentine ran his speare quite through his fathers body, that he fell down dead. His father being dead, he said Montioy vive *Greece*. *Orson* seeing his father dead, did weepe, and said unto Valentine; brother, there is

small

ſmall conqueſt in this, for you haue ſlaine your Father. When he heard him ſay ſo, he fell in an extaſie from his Horſe. To this lamentation of the two Brothers came *Reynard* of Province, and Myllon of Dyon. to comfort them, ſaying, knight haue patience, for teares cannot recall him: alas ſaid Valentine, what haue I done? It were happy for me, if death would take me from this World: I haue committed this fact, deteſtable both to Gods and men: O, what will become of me? my life haue I paſſed away in troubles, forments, and cares, and now to adde more ſorrow to my dates, I haue ſhed the bloud of my deare Father. Brother *Orlon*, take my ſword, and cut off my head, that the earth may not beare ſo bloody a Butcher. Brother ſaid *Orlon*, deſpaire not thus, but repent, and no doubt but you ſhall be forgiuen. So comforting him in this manner, at laſt they got him to his horſe, whereon being mounted, hee ran throughout the pagan troopes ſo furiouſly, that all they that ſtood in his way periſhed. Now began the battell to increaſe, and king Chriſtopher ſlew the Chriſtians on euery ſide. At laſt Valentine meeting him, gaue him ſuch a carniſado, that he peirced his body quite thorow. In this battell the D. Myllon of Dyon, and Reynard of Province, rufhed ſo fierce into the battell of the enemy that they were taken priſoners, yet notwithſtanding their aduerſe fortunes, they got their liberty once againe, and made Charles K. of France, with honour and ioy, to the deſtruction of Haufray and Henry, the two notable traytors: yet was not this fierce, long, & tedious battell ended, for they ſtood to it manfully on either ſide. Valentine being careleſſe of life, at laſt met with Brandiffer who encountred each other ſo fiercely, that both fell to the earth, but Valentine ſuddenly recouering himſelfe, tooke the K. ſuch a blow, that hee claue his head. K. Brumant ſeeing his brother ſlaine, departed out of the field, with the Admirall of Cordes, and K. *Joſuah*, who cauſed a retrait to be ſounded. The chriſtians following ſlew many thouſands, and others leapt into the ſea, and drowned themſelues. So the night drawing on, the Chriſtians returned into the City. Next morning in burying the dead, there was great lamentation for the Emperor of Greece. Then his body was royally interred in the city of *Angory*, but Valentine could not be comforted.

The

The Pagans being thus twiſe put to the woꝛſe, beſoꝛe *Angory*, D. Myllon tooke his leaue of Valentine, to returne into France, ſaying, *Valentine* I would I could returne as ſwiftly backe, as you bꝛought me hither. Friend (ſaid Valentine) I would I had neuer knowne the Art, ſoꝛ it hath bꝛought nothing but deration & ſhame on me, and an vntimely death that taught it me: ſo the D. Myllon departed. Valentine & *Orſon* intended to go ſoꝛ *Greece*, but beſoꝛe their departure, they crowned the Green Knight K. of *Angory*. After leaue taken, Orſon called the faire *Galazy* vnto him and ſaid; I ouꝛ know you are with child by me, yet I cannot wed you ſoꝛ that I haue another wife, but beſoꝛe I goe, I will make certaine Lands ouer vnto you ſoꝛ your maintenance, that you may heereafter liue of your ſelfe without the helpe of any other. All theſe offers ſhe denied, but ſaying ſhe would goe to ſea with him, and after confine me vnto ſome religious houſe, wherein I may ſpend the reſidue of my daies Agreed (quoth *Orſon*) and ſo he tooke her with him to Conſtantinople. Being come thither, they ſent woꝛd to the Empꝛeſſe of their Fathers death, but concealed by whom it was done. The Lady was ſoꝛowfull ſoꝛ her Husband, but loyed at the ſight of her Children: ſo did all the City likewiſe, making great triumphs thꝛoughout the ſame. The Empꝛeſſe being one day at dinner, ſayd vnto her Sons, Valentine it muſt be agreed betwixt you who ſhall be Empeꝛoꝛ. Orſon replyed, it appertaineth not to mee ſo take the firſt place. Bꝛother let it be as I ſay, ſoꝛ I am beholding to you, you nothing to me, theꝛeſoꝛe take the Empire, and ſway the Scepter.

At laſt, it was agreed on, that they ſhould ioyntly gouerne, but Valentine continued not long in that ſtate of dignity, ſoꝛ ſhoꝛtly after, on a moꝛning, he called to him Clerimond, and ſaid thus vnto her: Vnderſtand me, you know that I haue ſlaine my Father, and my conſcience remaineth ſtill troubled ſoꝛ the fact, and I am theꝛeſoꝛe winded to goe on Pilgrimage. Commend me to my Mother, and my bꝛother *Orſon*, both which I charge you not to ſee till fifteene dayes be paſſed ouer, and then giue him this letter, all which the Lady muſt conſent to, although in teares.

CHAP.

CHAP. LI.

How Valentine took leaue of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage, and how K. *Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his wife, and how he betrayed *Orſon* and the Greene Knight. And how *Galeran* deliuered his Letters to the Ladies and of the grieuous lamentations they made. How *Bellyſant* & *Clerimond* came to know King *Hugons* treaſon, and how *Galeran* loſt his head, And how *Orſon* and the Greene knight were ſet free.

When Valentine ſayd, Lady, ceaſe your teares, and giue me your wedding Ring: ſhe hauing done ſo, he broke it in two peeces, keeping the one halfe, and giuing her the other, ſaying my loue keepe thy halfe, and whatſoeuer you heare, beleeue nothing till you ſee this other halfe which

I poſſeſſe. At theſe wordes he imbraced her and wept bitterly, and ſo departed, onely one page with him. Hauing long trauailed, at laſt he came to *Rome*, there comming into the preſence of a Hermit, he confeſſed the death of his Father, the Hermit ſeeing him ſo penitent, enioyned him pennance: Firſt, change thy habit and go barely cloathed, and 7 yeares lye vnder the ſtaires of thy pallace without ſpeaking any wordes, thou ſhalt neither eat nor drinke but ſuch ſcrapps that come from thine own table, do this, & feare not thy ſins. Sir ſaid Valentine, all this I will do: ſo after he had dined, he departed without ſpeaking to his ſeruant: after this *Valentine* entred into a wood, feeding vpon Roots: and he continued there ſo long that he was forgotten amongſt men.

Orſon hauing now read the Letter that *Clerimond* deliuered him, wept bitterly, inſomuch as the Lady ſayd vnto him, Brother ceaſe your laments; alas ſayd *Orſon* I haue great cauſe, for this Letter ſheweth that my Brother will neuer returne: hereat the Lady ſwounded, and recouering her ſelfe, ſhe ſaid, why hath my Lord hidden his intent from me? but all her ſorrow could not call him home againe. Tydings was ſpread through the City, that Valentine would neuer returne: Clerimond wailed, Bellyant complained, and *Orſon* ſighed. Now (as the ſtory ſaith) the lady Fezon hearing that *Orſon* had got another Lady with Childe, ſhe dyed with griefe. Being dead, *Orſon* made 2 yeares ſolemnity of her funerall, & after married with *Galazy*, of whom ye haue heard before.

Now I ſhall ſhew you how Valentine came backe to *Conſtantinople* in beggerly weedes, inſomuch that he was not knowne, going from houſe to houſe a begging. At laſt, he went into his brothers pallace about ſupper time, and thoſe that waited on the table, beate him away. *Orſon* ſeeing them ſo cruell, bad them let him alone, for I am willing that all poore men ſhall be receiued for my brother *Valentines* ſake, that ſo we may heare tydings of him. After this they brought him meat & wine, but he eſpying a basket wherin the ſcraps were put, eat therof, which amazed the beholders. Night being come, the ſeruitors asked *Orſon* if he would let that counterfeit abide in his pallace. I (qd. *Orſon*) for it may be for ſome vow which he hath made. Thus abode *Valentine*, and made his bed vnder the ſtaires, of ſtraw. On the morrow, *Orſon* paſſing by, gaue him mo-

ney, after came his mother, and his wife Clerimond, and they gaue him Money ſaying, how can you endure thus naked without cloathes, this night you ſhall haue ſome prouided for you They being gone he gaue his money to two poore men ſtanding by him, who ſcoffed him for his labour. Next day at dinner they gaue him variety of meats, which he refuſed, & made ſignes for the almes baskut: Orſon to try him yet further, cauſed ſome of the beſt meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it. Then (ſayd Orſon) ſurely this is ſome vow that he hath made vnto the Gods. Thus Valentine remained within the Pallace without being knowne, that all men thought him dead.

In theſe dates there was a K. of Hungary named Hugon, who heard that Valentine had giuen ouer the Empire of *Greece* vnto his brother Orſon. This *Hugon* came to *Co.* ſtantinople, & was honorably receiued. After his arriuall he came to the Lady Clerimond,, and ſayd, I am K. of Hungary, and haue no wife, and for that purpoſe am I come hither to craue your loue. I know that Valentine is dead, or elſe that he will neuer returne, wherefore Lady grant me thy loue, and thou ſhalt be queene of *Hungary*. Sir, qd. the Lady, I thanke you for your kingly proffer, but to be your wife I cannot, for ſure my Valentine liueth, and for 7 yeare I will euery day expect his returne: beſides when I make choice of a Husband, my Brother *Orſon* and the Greene knight muſt know, for without their leaue I will neuer marry. Then he went towards *Orſon* and demanded of him, if he heard any tydings of his brother. Great K. (qd. *Orſon* no: I heard that he left me a letter, the which his wife deliuered me, and certified me that he is gone to exile, & beareth about him halfe the ring that hee was married withall, the other halfe he left with her, charging her that ſhe beleeue nothing of him, till ſhe ſee the other halfe which he poſſeſſed. The Gods be his good ſpeed, qd. Hugon, for he was a worthy knight. But one thing (qd. Hugon haue, I more to acquaint you with, I am determined to take a Journey to Ieruſalem to viſite the holy Shrine, ſo you would beare me company. With all my heart (qd. Orſon) but let vs go to *Angory*, with vs the Greene knight, who is K. thereof. It ſhal be ſo qd. Hugon: ſo *Orſon* taking leaue of his mother, and his wife Galazy, came to Angory & was receiued with great ioy. Hauing

feaſted

ſeaſted there, they tooke their way to Ieruſalem. Being come into the City, (while they were beholding diuers Monuments) Hugon ſtole away from them to the K. of Sury, & ſaid: I haue a meſſage to deliuer worthy your attention: There is newly arriued here two worthy knights that are your greateſt enemies, for they ſlew King Brandiffer, K. Lucar, & your brother K. of India. When Rabaſtre heard al that he could ſay, he was very ſorry for the death of his brother, & ſaid vnto Hugon, can you deliuer me theſe two knights: yea ſayd the traytor, ſo you will giue me their golden ſeales: ſir qd. he, them and much more will I giue you: Then hearken, ſend vnto the Patriarkes houſe, and he will tell you where they are. The K. preſently ſent out 800. armed men, and found them at dinner, then they tooke them, and brought them vnto the K. Faile enemies (qd. the K.) to our liues and religion, my heart euen leapeth for ioy that I haue gotten you, tell me what are your names? My name is *Orſon*, & this the Green Knight. You are the men I wiſht for, & there is another called Valentine had I him alſo, I would vſe you all alike; then he cauſed their ſeales to be taken away, & giuen to *Hugon*, and they to be caſt into a Dungeon, and fed onely with bread and water. Now all this while they knew not what was become of *Hugon*, for they thought verily he had been ſlaine by the *Sarazens*, while he was plotting with another Traitor in the City called *Galeran*, and began thus to ſolicit him. *Galeran* my deſire is to imploy your ſecreſis in a matter of import, and I will reward the ſufficiently. Vnckle (qd. *Galeran*) feare me not, I know your drift, you would obtaine the louely Clerimond: true ſayd *Hugon*, therefore let vs write a letter in the name of *Orſon*, and we will ſeale it with his ſeale, and the Letter ſhall be thus framed.

Orſon, by the power of the Gods Emperor of Greece, vnto the thrice renowned Soueraigne Lady my Mother: vnto you my loue *Galazy*, & my ſiſter Clerimond, greeting. Know this, that many things are falne out contrary to our expectation, which are here ſet downe, requiring nothing but patience: Ladies, know, that I haue found my Brother Valentine on his death Bed at Ieruſalem, and a little before his laſt Gaſpe, hee charged me to ſalute Clerimond in his name, and command her, that if euer ſhee marry againe, ſhee take ſome Prince to her Husband;

the cauſe why he ſent not the halfe Ring was, for that it was ſtolne from him in his ſickeneſſe.

This Letter thus finiſhed, Orſon wrote another letter ſaying: Right wel-beloued ſiſter, we haue ſaid ynough about my Brother Valentine, but now we wiſh you for the great beauty wherewith you are adorned: firſt to accompliſh the deſire of the dead: ſecondly to increaſe your honour, we aduiſe you to match with Hugon Prince of Hungary, as you will auoid our diſpleaſure. And for further authority, we haue ſealed theſe Letters with our owne ſeales. Againe know, that we cannot yet returne, for great warres is faine between the Infidels and Chriſtians, ſo we leane you to the tuition of the Gods. Theſe letters being ſealed, Hugon gaue them to Galeran to beere to Conſtantinople, himſelfe following after, by this meanes thinking to get the Lady.

Galeran being in Conſtantinople, deliuered his Letters to the Lady Bellyſant, who commanded that he ſhould be highly feaſted. Afterward, ſhee called one to read them, and Valentine lying in the Hall, heard the contents thereof. Being read, the Ladies grew extreame ſorrowfull for the death of Valentine, but eſpecially the Lady Clerimond pittiouſly lamenting her miſfortunes, ſaid: How vnhappy amongſt women am I? Alas Valentine, why went I not with thee, to ſee thy body laid vp ſafe in the earth? vnkind brother, and the Greene knight, why are you two ſuch mortall enemies, as to wiſh me to marriage ſo ſoone after my Valentines death? ſeeing I haue loſt ſo noble, courageous, & louing a knight? the Mirror of Chiualry, the Roſe of honour, the example of Curteſie, & the patron of truth. Death, haſt thou not one dart left to ſhoot at this poore breſt, for ſeeing my life is nothing but ſorrow, I will neuer haue other Huſband, but in ſorrow will I ſpend the reſt of my daies? All this did Valentine behold, which he pitied, but fearing to bee knowne he buried it in ſilence. Bellyſant ſeeing Clerimond thus diolent, ſaid, daughter haue patience: you know he was my ſonne, and I ſorrow for him at my heart, but when I conſider that he cannot be fetcht backe therewith, I paſſe it ouer, & rather thinke on what my brother, and my Son Orſon doth aduiſe you vnto. Good mother (qd. the Lady) ſay ſo no more, for I will neuer marry, & therewith went weeping to her chamber, and Valentine he lay vnder

der the ſtairs, muſing how theſe treaſons ſhould come about. Some fowr daies after came K. Hugon to Conſtantinople, and was receiued with great honour, but Clerimond ſhewed him no good entertainement. Being there, he ſayd vnto the Empreſſe, you vnderſtand of the death of your Son, for whom I am ſorry: But is it agreed vpon, that I ſhall marry the Lady? Sir (quoth Clerimond, I am not willing to marry you, nor any other: all this treaſon Valentine heard. But in the end the matter was ſo much vrged, that Hugon had the Lady, which much increaſed his ioyes, but they were ſhort.

Valentine hauing ended his Oriſons to the Gods, the Oracle made anſwere to him on this manner: Valentine get thee out of the City, there thou ſhalt find without the gates a Pilgrim, take his Pilgrim weeds, and when thou haſt put them on, get thee to thy place, and there ſhalt thou reueale before all commers, the treaſon practiſed againſt thy loue, for in this diſguiſe thou canſt not be deſcried. Valentine did as he was commanded, came to the court in this diſguiſe, in the preſence of the Ladies, and amongſt them was the traitor Hugon, euen he that vttered ſuch reprochfull words againſt Clerimond. Now Valentine came to Bellyfant, ſaying: Lady, I beſeech you ſhew me the Wife of Valentine, whereat Hugon bluſhing replyed: pilgrim, get thee gone into the kitchen, for this is no place for thee. Sir ſayd Valentine I would faine do a meſſage to her: wouldſt thou ſayd the Lady, I am ſhee whom thou deſireſt to ſee: then thus, I haue lately ſeene your loue Valentine, that by me ſendeth ſalutations willing me to ſay, that within three dayes he will be with you. Pilgrim (qd. the Lady) aduiſe well thy ſelfe what thou ſpeakeſt, for I heard my loue is dead. Lady (qd the Pilgrim) beleeue it not, for I proteſt to deliuer my body to death, if it be not true as I haue ſaid. Hugon hearing theſe words related to the Ladies, ſecretly mounted his horſe and neuer returned backe. The Ladies on the other ſide, were much amazed at the Pilgrims tale, and offered to ſtaie him, but he would not: only he ſayd to them, Ladies pardon me I pray, for I haue certaine companions in the towne, which I muſt needs viſit, therefore I requeſt your pardon: yet Clerimond would gratifie him for his newes, giuing him money, which he boldly beſtowed againe vpon the Seruants.

preſently after it was demanded what was become of K. Hugon? a Damoſel ſtanding by, ſaid, I ſaw him now take horſe, but what is become of him, I cannot tell.

Upon theſe words *Galeran* came in, and they demanded of him, what was become of his Uncle *Hugon*, who making no reply, Bellyſant grew inraged, and ſaid, you ſhall not eſcape, till you have revealed the treaſon Hugon hath practiſed againſt vs. Then *Galeran* ſayd, Ladie take mercy on me, & I ſhall tell you all: ſay on, I pardon thee. Mine Uncle is guilty of Treaſon, and hath ſold to the Pagans the Emperor *Orſon*, & the Green knight: which ſtrange ſore daunted the aſſembly: but *Galeran* was preſently hanged. Then Valentine leaving the habite of a Pilgrim, returned againe vnto the Pallace. Clerimond eſpying him, ſaid, poore man where haſt thou beene, mee thinkes you ſeeme diſpleaſed, becauſe I ſaid I will not marry. Valentine replyed not at all, but left her: yet ſhe not ſo contented at his deiection, cauſed a coſtly quilt to be brought for him to lodge vpon, but he refuſed it.

King Sury having *Orſon* and the Greene knight in hould, cauſed them to be brought before him, and ſaid vnto them, Lords you ſee you are now at my mercy, wherefore I vow, you ſhall never eſcape with life, except you reſigne backe vnto me the City of *Angory*, which you with-hold from me. Orſon replyed, we will never conſent hereunto, except thou giue K. Hugon vnto vs. The king ſaid vnto them, ſpeake not of him, for he is the Traitor which hath ſold you into my hands, & hath carried with him your ſeales. *Orſon* marueled much hereat, and ſwore that hee would never reſt, vntill he were revenged on him, and ſo did the Greene knight alſo.

Now it ſo fell out, that theſe priſoners were content to yeeld for the kings demand, & ſo returned to Conſtantinople. Being come home, *Clerimond* told him, that ſhe had heard tydings of Valentine, which much rejoyced *Orſon*, who lying with his wife that night, got a Son, called Morant, who after ruled Angory. Not long after, *Orſon* gathered an hoaſt of men to goe for *Angory*, which when Hugon heard, he offred to him the ſayd City, and 4 horſe load of Gold: and if there were any man durſt call him traitor (*Orſon* excepted) he would fight with him. The green knight accepted his challenge, & they armed themſelues, and the greene knight came

came firſt into the Liſts. All things ſet in order, they encountred each other with their ſperes, next with their ſwords, but at laſt the Greene knight gaue king Hugon ſuch a ſtroke on his helme, that he cut a part of his head euen off at the ſhoulders, ſo that he fell into a ſwound. Thus the greene knight got the honour of the day: *Hugon* reuiuing againe, requeſted a confeſſor, and vnfolding all the Treaſon preſently dyed in the place, Orſon notwithſtanding cauſed his body to be ſumptuouſly interred, as to the perſon of a king appertained. At laſt Hugons treaſon being blowne abroad, by the Nobles conſent, rendred the City to the Emperor *Orſon*. This being ended, they returned into Conſtantinople. At whoſe comming home Valentine reioyced, but Clerimond marualled that ſhe ſaw not Valentine, as the Pilgrim had ſayd vnto her, little ſuſpecting that he was ſo neare her, for he remained vnder the pallace ſteires, where he ſhall ſhortly end his life, and then he ſhall be knowne.

CHAP. LII.

How at the end of Seven yeares, *Valentine* dyed in the pallace of *Conſtantinople*, and how *Orſon* turned Hermit.

AT the end of ſeauen yeares Valentine fell into a mortall diſeaſe, whereof he dyed. Before his death an Angell appeared to him ſaying, Valentine thy glaſſe is run, for within foure houres thou ſhalt die: whereat he greatly reioyced making ſigues for pen, inke, & paper: when he had it, he wrote, that it was himſelfe that appeared like a Pilgrim, and diſcouered the treaſon. After putting to his name, he cloſed vp the paper, putting in the other halfe of the Ring that he had kept: ſhortly after he layd him down, and dyed.

When *Orſon* ſaw that he was dead, he was troubled in his mind. The poore man being dead, held a letter in his hand, which *Orſon* would haue taken out, but could not: then came Clerimond, & as ſoone as ſhe laid hold thereon, the hand opened it ſelfe. Clerimond, breaking vp the Letter, and knowing the halfe Ring, ſaid: Lords, we ſhall ſhortly heare newes of Valentine: ſo a ſecretary was called to read it, at the reading hereof, was great lamentation on each ſide, but eſpecially of Clerimond, who falling vpon the dead body,

said: Alas I have lost all my joy, comfort and hopes, for that my sons should die so neare my person, and I not know of it. Now great preparation was made for his funerall Rites, he was interred in great magnificence in Constantinople. Clerimond afterward betooke hee to a single life. Thus having shewne the death of Valentine, and what became of Clerimond: let us returne to Orson, who ruled the Empire of Constantinople Seaven yeares, and by his second wife Galazy he had a Sonne named Morant, who after was King of Angory.

After 7 yeares were expired, Galazy dyed, for whom the Emperor Orson was exceeding sorrowfull, and in the end betooke him to the Woods, whereas he fed on Mrad and roots, such as he found. It happened one night that he saw a vision, it seemed to him more glorious then his tongue could utter. After this vision he awaked, and being affonied thereat, with teares he came to the Greene knight, and said: Sir, I see the uncertainty of the world, for which, I am willing to resigne my estate & Children unto you: See them well educated, that they may by you be made fit to governe such a people, for I will spend the rest of my daies in solitary contemplation. When the Green knight had heard these words, hee wept bitterly, but Orson recomforted him, saying: weepe not, but pray for me, as I for you, that you may accomplish that which I put you in trust withall. With this Orson departed, charging the greene knight not to tell it to any. So taking his way towards a Wood he there spent the remainder of his daies. The

Green knight after so governed his Children, that
they carefully spent their time on earth,
and followed their Father
to his Grave.

***

FINIS.

The Table.

HOW King *Pepin* baniſhed his Queene *Bertha*; And how he gaue his ſiſter *Bellyſant* in Marriage to *Alexander* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. *Chap.* 1.

How the Arch-prieſt of *Conſtantinople* betrayed the Emperor his Lord and Maſter, in making loue to the Empreſſe, and what euill followed thereupon. *Chap.* 2.

How the Arch-prieſt hauing receiued this repulſe at the hands of *Bellyſant*, to ſaue his own honour, practiſed Treaſon againſt the Innocent Lady. *chap.* 3.

How the Arch-prieſt put on him the habite of a knight at armes, and being well mounted, followed the Empreſſe *Bellyſant*, who was lately baniſhed. *chap.* 4.

How *Bellyſant* in her baniſhment, was deliuered of Two faire Sonnes in the wood, whoſe Names were *Valentine* and *Orſon*, and how ſhe loſt them. *chap.* 5.

Of the Beare that bare away one of the Lady *Bellyſants* Children. *chap.* 6.

How by the counſell of the Arch-prieſt, new cuſtomes and Taxations were raiſed through the city of *Conſtantinople*, and how the Treaſon came to light. *chap.* 7.

How the Emperor by the counſell of his Nobility, ſent for king *Pepin* to ſee the combate fought between the Arch-prieſt, and the Marchant. *chap.* 8.

How the Marchant and the Arch-prieſt encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing of *Bellyſant*, and what a glorious victory did betide the Marchant. *chap.* 9.

How king *Pepin* returned from *Conſtantinople*, into *Erance*, and after ſayled to *Reme*, to fight againſt the *Sarazens* that had ſurpriſed that city. *chap.* 10

How *K. Pepin* beſiedged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* Iuſted with the admirall of the *Sarazens*, and ſlew him, whereby the City was won againe from the *Sarazens*. *chap.* 11.

How *Hauſray* and *Henry* repined at the loue the king did ſhew towards *Valentine*. *chap.* 12.

How *Valentine* conquered his Brother *Orſon* in the Forreſt of *Orleance*. *chap.* 13.

How *Valentine* hauing conquered *Orſon* the Wilde-man, departed from the Forreſt towards *Orleance*, whereas *King Pepin* was reſident. *chap.* 14.

How *Hauſray* and *Henry* tooke counſell together to murther *Valentine* in the chamber of *Eglantine*. *chap.* 15.

How Duke *Sauary* ſent vnto *King Pepin* for ayd againſt the *Greene Knight* who would haue his daughter in *Marriage* againſt his will. *chap.* 16.

How diuers *Knights* arriued at *Aquitaine*, at a ſolemne Iuſts there houlden to beare away the loue of the beauteous Lady *Fezon*. *chap.* 17.

How *Hauſray* and *Henry*, accompanied with a Troope of their Confederates lay in Ambuſh to take away the life of *Valentine*. *chap.* 18.

How *Orſon* and *Grygar* fought together, how *Orſon* returned victor, cauſed *Grygar* to confeſſe the Treaſon, who was after hanged, and *Valentine* deliuered from the Dungeon. *chap.* 19.

How *Grygar* being vanquiſhed by *Orſon*, confeſſed his treaſon to *K. Pepin*, and how *Hauſray* and *Henry* had been the onely plotters thereof, againſt the worthy *Valentine*. *chap.* 20.

How *Orſon* conquered the *Greene Knight*, and what followed thereof; alſo, how *Valentine* attempted to fight with him, but could not ouercome him. *chap.* 21.

How *Valentine* tooke good aduiſe, and ſent *Orſon* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the *Greene Knight*, and how *Orſon* ouercame him. *chap.* 22.

Orſon hauing conquered the *Greene Knight*, *Valentine* cauſed him to be Chriſtened, and ſending him to *King Pepin*, had know-

knowledge of his Father and Mother, by meanes of the Greene knight. *chap.* 23.

How the ſame night that *Orſon* was made ſure to the Lady *Fezon*, an Angell appeared vnto *Valentine*, and of the charge ſhee gaue vnto him. *chap.* 24.

How King *Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orſon* were his Nephewes, by the report of *Blandimain*: and how the Greene knight ſubmitted himſelfe, according to his promiſe made vnto *Valentine*. *chap.* 25.

How K. *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*, to beare theſe tydings: and how before his returne, he warred vpon the mighty *Soldan*, who had beleagred *Conſtantinople*. *chap.* 26.

How the Greene Knight juſted againſt the two *Sarazens*, and hauing ſlaine the one, the other fled: and how King *Pepin* and his hoaſt was lodged within *Conſtantinople*. *chap.* 27.

How *Valentine* and *Orſon* arriued at the ſtrong Caſtle where faire *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen head they had knowledge of their parents. *chap.* 28.

How as *Valentine* was before the Caſtle gate talking with the Guard, *Clerimond* bewayled the loue of *Valentine*, and how hee Juſted for entrance, and ouercame the Seneſchall. *chap.* 29.

How *Valentine* ſhewed *Clerimond* her Brothers Ring, the which the Greene Knight gaue him, and how hee queſtioned with the Brazen head, which told him from whence hee was deſcended. *chap.* 30.

How the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that paſt betweene his Siſter and *Valentine*, by meanes of one *Pacolet* a Dwarfe, and Enchanter. *chap.* 31.

How *Pacolet* heereupon made another expeditious Iourney into *Portugall*, to ſee the Lady *Bellyſant*, *Valentines* Mother, and of his returning backe, and the newes that hee brought. *chap.* 32.

How *Valentine* and *Orſon* were betrayed by the treachery of *Ferragus*, and how hee committed them to priſon, with their woefull lamentations. *chap.* 33.

How Pacolet the Dwarfe comforted the two Ladies. *chap.* 34.

How by art *Pacolet* ſet free *Valentine* and *Orſon* from the priſon of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and the faire *Clerimond*. *chap.* 35.

How Valentine and *Orſon* eſcaped the caſtle of *Ferragus*, and ſayled with the two Ladies into *Aquitaine*. *chap.* 36.

How king *Ferragus* aſſembled all his men of warre, to take reuenge upon *Valentine* and his ſiſter *Clerimond*, and how he followed them into *Aquitaine*. *chap.* 37.

How the D. of *Aquitaine* was taken priſoner in the battle by *Ferragus*, and how *Orſon* ſet him free by the helpe of *Pacolet* the Dwarfe. *chap.* 38.

How Orſon tryed the conſtancy of the Lady *Fezon*, before hee married her. *chap.* 39.

How Ferragus ſtrengthened his forces by the ayde of king *Trumpart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimaine*. *chap.* 40.

Of the pittifull tale the *Empreſſe* told *Valentine* her ſon before his farewell to *Conſtantinople*; and what ſpeeches paſſed between him, his Father, and his vncle. *chap.* 41.

How Valentine and the *Greene* knight were taken priſoners in the battell before *Conſtantinople*, by the *Soldan Moradin* and his men. *chap.* 42.

How Pacolet by inchantment deliuered *Valentine* and the *Greene* Knight out of the bondage of the Souldan; and how *Pacolet* cozoned the Souldan when he had him on his wodden horſe, and inſtead of carrying him into *Portugall*, brought him into *Conſtantinople*, where he was hanged. *chap.* 43.

How king *Trumpart* came before *Aquitaine* to ſuccour *Ferragus*, and brought *Adrimain* the *Enchanter*, who betrayed *Pacolet*. And how the king of *Inde* cauſed king *Trumparts* head to bee ſtricken off, and how hee would haue marryed with *Clerimond*, and how *Pacolet* was reuenged on *Adrimain* in the ſhape of a woman. And how *Ferragus* was ſlaine, and how *Orſon* and the Duke went with an army to *Conſtantinople* to ſuccour the *Emperor*: and how *Orſon* led along with him his mother. And how all the Pagans were ſlaine before *Conſtantinople*, and how the

the Emperor receiued his ſon *Orſon* and his wife *Bellyſant* with great ioy. *chap.* 44.

How King *Pepin* tooke leaue of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orſon* went along with him. How *Garnyer* fainted, and left the knife in the bed, and accuſed *Orſon* falſly of Treaſon, and how the knife was found in the kings bed. And how *Orſon* claimed combat againſt his accuſers, when they would haue adjudged him, and it was (by the twelue Peeres of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in ſeeking *Clerimond* arriued in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end, he ſlew the dragon. And how *Valentine* after the conqueſt of the dragon cauſed the King of *Antioch* and all his land to be baptized, and of the lawleſſe loue of the Queene *Rozamond*. And how the king of *Antioch* was put to death for renouncing his Mahometry, by *Brandiffer* his wiues Father: and how the Emperour of *Greece* and the Greene knight, were taken priſoners by *Brandiffer*. *chap.* 45.

How *Clerimond* after the yeare was paſt, faigned her ſelfe mad becauſe ſhe would not wed the king of *Inde*. And of *Lucar* that would reuenge the death of his Father king *Trompart* vpon the King of *Inde*. And how king *Lucar* in the City of *Eſclardy*, wedded *Rozamond* the faire daughter of *Brandiffer*. And how *Valentine* departed from *Eſclardy*, to breath out defiance: and of the anſwere he brought from the *Indian* king. And how *Rozamond* found a way to be taken and led vnto the *Indian* King: and how King *Lucar* cauſed *Brandiffer* to ſtay with him, and ſent *Valentine* into *Angory* againſt king *Pepin*: and how king *Pepin* tooke the city of *Angory*. *chap.* 46.

How *Valentine* returned backe to *India* after the battell, and bare with him the dead body of K. *Murgalant*. And how hee heard tydings of his Father, and how *Pacolet* freed the *Indian* K. and left *Brandiffer* in priſon. And how K. *Lucar* cauſed all that hundred that watched the *Indian* to be drawne to death at horſe tailes, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed ſecretly out of his hoaſt, and went to *Angory*. And of the viſion of K. *Pepin*, and how he went into the holy land with the twelue peeres of *France*, and what hapned. And how *Hanfray* and *Henry* betrayed

their father king *Pepin*, and the twelue peeres of *France*. And how the *Caliph* of *Bendas* made truce between the Indian, *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, And how *Hanfray* to further his treaſon came before *Lucar* & *Brandiffer*, & how he was intrapped in his own net. *chap.* 47.

How *Valentine* and *pacolet* came before the caſtle, and how *pacolet* raiſed vp the Devill, to aske his counſel about the taking of the caſtle. And how *Brandiffer* brought the twelue peeres of *France* into his ſtrong caſtle, and impriſoned them. And how he beſieged the city of *Angory*. And how *Brandiffer* having knowledge that *Lucar* was a captiue in *Angory*, made meanes to *Valentine* to deliuer him upon ſufficient Ranſome. *chap.* 48.

How *Myllon Daugler* (who was taken for the king of *France*) was deliuered out of priſon, inſtead of king *Lucar*. And how *Valentine* and the Duke *Myllon* iſſued out of the City of *Angory*, and wan the battell from the *Sarazens*. And how king *Pepin* was deliuered in the change, for the king of *Indies* Marſhall, and left *Angory*, and returned into *France* to ſuccour his Wife. *chap.* 49.

How *Valentine* vnder the ſhape of a Phiſition went into *India*, to ſee and ſpeake with the faire *Clerimond*. And how *Valentine* rode away with her, & how the K. of *Britaine* was giuen to king *Pepin* by treaſon. And how *Valentine* tooke the ſtrong caſtle, and deliuered his father the Emperor, & all the reſt of the priſoners. And how the Emperor, *Orſon*, & the Green knight, kept a ſtrong garriſon in this caſtle, & how *Hanfray* and *Henry* compaſſed the death of their Father. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orſon*, & the Green knight left the caſtle, & came to the ſuccour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the chriſtians iſſued out of the city of *Angory*, and bid battell to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly ſlew his owne father. And how *Myllon Daugler* returned into *France*, and *Valentine* and *Orſon* into *Greece*. *chap.* 50.

How *Valentine* took leaue of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage, and how K. *Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his wife, and how he betrayed *Orſon* and the Greene Knight. And how *Galeran* deliuered his Letters to the Ladies, and of the grieuous lamentati-

ons

ons they made. How *Bellyſant* & *Clerimond* came to know *King Hugons* treaſon, and how *Galeran* loſt his head. And how *Orſon* and the *Greene* knight were ſet free. *chap.* 31.
How at the end of Seven yeares, *Valentine* dyed in the pallace of *Conſtantinople*, and how *Orſon* turned Hermit. *chap.* 32.

FINIS.